



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

LATIN  
PROSE COMPOSITION

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

17  
33

TUFTS COLLEGE

Edue T 919.03.650

TUFTS COLLEGE LIBRARY

CANCELLED

*Unknown*

*November 1926*

*90738*

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY

*Review*



3 2044 097 078 745



TURNER COLLEGE  
LATIN LIBRARY

# PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

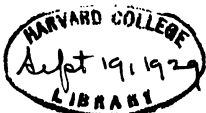
HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B., HARVARD

HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE, NEW YORK



NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Edge T. 9.19.03.650  
303.100.8701  
V8A881



*Tufts College*

COPYRIGHT, 1903. BY  
HENRY CARR PEARSON.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

PEARSON. LATIN PROSE.

W. P. 24

90738

## PREFACE

THIS book has been prepared in response to the numerous requests I have received from those teachers who are using my Greek Prose Composition. It is an attempt (1) to combine a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Latin syntax with abundant practice in translating English into Latin; and (2) to afford constant practice in writing Latin at sight.

Part I contains, in graded lessons, the principal points of Latin syntax, the unusual and non-essential being purposely omitted. These lessons are designed for use at the beginning of the second year's study of Latin, thereby serving as a partial review of the first year's work and as an introduction to the composition work in connection with the prose authors read subsequently.

Part II contains short, simple English sentences based on Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War. In Books I and II short, model sentences and phrases are selected from the Latin text, so as to direct the student's attention more forcibly to the actual Latin usages.

Part III presents disconnected English sentences based upon Cicero's Catiline, I-II, and connected English based upon Cicero's Catiline, III-IV, Pompey's Military Command, Archias, Marcellus, and Ligarius. There are also carefully graded exercises for general review preparatory to college entrance examinations.



At intervals in Parts I and II review lessons are introduced, containing each a list of the important words and an enumeration of the principal constructions used in the preceding sections. The instructor is urged to form original sentences for his class to translate at sight into Latin based upon these words and constructions. While, strictly speaking, this is not sight work, yet it enables the student to make definite preparation for this kind of work, and gives him valuable practice in the offhand use of words and principles of grammar.

The sentences at the beginning of Part III are comparatively easy, so that Part II may be omitted, if the instructor has not time enough to complete the entire book. The best results, however, will be obtained from a completion of all the work here given.

I take this occasion to thank Albert I. Oliver, Instructor in Latin, Kent's Hill Seminary, Maine, and W. S. Burrage, Ph.D., of Cambridge, Massachusetts, for reading the manuscript of Part I. I am especially indebted to Miss Emeline B. Bartlett, formerly of the Allegheny Preparatory School, for the valuable criticism and assistance that she has given me throughout the preparation of this book.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

---

H. = Harkness' Complete Latin Grammar, references to Harkness' Standard Grammar being inclosed in parentheses. LM. = Lane-Morgan. A. = Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar, references to the preceding edition in parentheses. G. = Gildersleeve. B. = Bennett.

# CONTENTS

## PART I

LESSON	PAGE
1. Agreement of Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs . . . . .	7
2. The Accusative Case . . . . .	10
3. The Genitive Case . . . . .	12
4. The Dative Case . . . . .	16
5. The Ablative Case . . . . .	19
6. Review and Sight Practice . . . . .	24
7. Pronouns: Demonstrative, Personal, Reflexive, Possessive .	25
8. Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ): Relative, Indefinite, Correlatives .	30
9. Questions: Answers: Connectives . . . . .	35
10. The Participle: Its Uses and Tenses . . . . .	39
11. Gerund and Gerundive. The Periphrastic Conjugations. Supine . . . . .	44
12. Review and Sight Practice . . . . .	47
13. Tenses of Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive. Delibera- tive Subjunctive. How to express "Ought," "Must" .	49
14. Commands, Exhortations, Prohibitions. How to express "May," "Can," "Might," etc. . . . .	53
15. Conditions and Wishes . . . . .	56
16. Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Questions. Construction after Verbs of Fearing and Doubting . . . . .	60
17. Review and Sight Practice . . . . .	64
18. Subjunctive of Purpose and Result. Object Clauses . . .	65
19. Construction after Verbs of Hindering and Refusing. Tem- poral Clauses . . . . .	69
20. Indirect Discourse. Simple Sentences . . . . .	73
21. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences . . . . .	78
22. Concession. Proviso. Cause. Characteristic. Review of Relative Clauses . . . . .	82
23. Review and Sight Practice . . . . .	86

## PART II

	PAGE
Exercises based on Caesar, Book I . . . . .	87
Exercises based on Caesar, Book II . . . . .	118
Exercises based on Caesar, Book III . . . . .	146
Exercises based on Caesar, Book IV . . . . .	159

## PART III

First Oration against Catiline . . . . .	175
Second Oration against Catiline . . . . .	187
Third Oration against Catiline . . . . .	195
Fourth Oration against Catiline . . . . .	201
Pompey's Military Command . . . . .	207
The Citizenship of Archias . . . . .	220
The Oration for Marcellus . . . . .	226
The Oration for Ligarius . . . . .	229
Exercises for General Review . . . . .	232
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	239
GRAMMATICAL INDEX . . . . .	255

# PART I

## LESSON I

### AGREEMENT OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, VERBS

1. **Apposition.** — A noun in apposition with another noun agrees with it in *case*, and, when it is possible, in *gender* and *number*.

**Servius rēx, *Servius the king.***

**quattuor hic primum ōmen equōs vidi, *here I saw four horses, the first omen.***

2. A noun in apposition with a possessive pronoun or adjective may be in the *genitive*, because the possessive implies a *genitive*.

**nōmen meum absentis, *my name in my absence (i.e. the name of me absent).***

3. A noun in apposition is often expressed in English by a clause of time, cause, etc.

**litterās Graecās senex didici, *I learned Greek when an old man.***

4. A predicate noun is one connected with the subject by some form of the verb *sum* or a similar verb (i.e. *fiō, become; videor, seem; maneo, remain; creor, be elected; appellor, be called; habeor, be held, regarded*):

Cicerō orātor fuit, *Cicero was an orator.*

Numa creātus est rēx, *Numa was elected king.*

Orestem sē esse dixit, *he said that he was Orestes.*

#### AGREEMENT OF NOUNS, SECTIONS 1-4

[H. 393. 1, 5, 6, 8; (362, 363); LM. 475; A. 282-284, 302, e; (184, 185); G. 320-325; B. 167-169.]

5. An attributive adjective belonging to two or more nouns regularly agrees with the nearest:

pater tuus et māter, *your father and mother.*

6. A predicate adjective is generally *plural* when it modifies two or more singular subjects; it is *masculine* if the subjects are living beings of different genders, and *neuter* if the subjects are things. If the subjects represent both living beings and things, there is no fixed rule:

pater sororque occisi sunt, *father and sister were killed.*

labor voluptāsque inter sē sunt iūcta, *labor and delight are bound together.*

7. Sometimes an adjective or a participle does not agree with a noun according to strict grammatical form, but according to the sense or natural gender of the noun:

hominum millia sex perterriti, *six thousand men were badly frightened.*

#### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, SECTIONS 5-7

[H. 394, 395; (438, 439); LM. 476-481; A. 285-287; (186, 187); G. 286, 290; B. 234, 235.]

8. When a verb has two or more singular subjects, the verb is either (*a*) plural, or (*b*) singular, in agreement with the nearest subject:

**pater et avus mortui sunt**, *his father and grandfather are dead.*

**senātus populusque Rōmānus voluit**, *the senate and people of Rome ordained.*

9. A collective noun commonly takes a verb in the singular, but the plural is often used when *individuals* are thought of :

**senātus haec intellegit**, *the senate is aware of this.*

**cum tanta multitudō lapidēs conicerent**, *when such a crowd was throwing stones.*

10. When the subjects differ in *person*, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third :

**si tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmus**, *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

#### AGREEMENT OF VERBS, SECTIONS 8-10

[H. 389, 392; (461, 463); LM. 469-474; A. 317; (205) G. 211, 287; B. 254, 255.]

#### 11. Translate :

1. When a girl, she was regarded as wise.
2. You<sup>1</sup> and I will do this.
3. A part of the soldiers were put to flight.
4. Your sister and brother have come.
5. They gave it to Caesar, the consul.
6. The boy and his sister were very brave.
7. I heard of<sup>2</sup> your bravery when a youth.
8. Zeal and patience have been called virtues.
9. Two thousand men had been seen in the town.
10. A multitude of soldiers were on the wall.

<sup>1</sup> See example under 10 for order of pronouns.

<sup>2</sup> *dē* with ablative.

## LESSON 2

## THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

12. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative:

*librum scripsit, he wrote a book.*

13. The meaning of a verb, even of one ordinarily intransitive, may be emphasized or more exactly defined by adding an accusative of kindred derivation. This is called the *Cognate accusative*, and is usually modified by an adjective:

*tūtām vitām vivere, to lead a secure life.*

14. Many verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing*, and the like, may take two accusatives, — one of the person or thing affected, the other a predicate accusative:

*urbem Rōmam vocāvit, he called the city Rome.*

15. Some verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing* may take two accusatives — one of the person, and one of the thing:

*pācem tē poscimus, we demand peace of you.*

1. Some of these verbs may take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, generally, *petō* (ab), *seek* (from); *postulō* (ab), *demand* (of); *quaerō* (ab, dē, ex), *ask* (of):

*quaerit ex sōlō ea, he asks him in private about those things.*

*pācem ā vōbīs petimus, we implore peace from you.*

16. The accusative is used to express the duration of time or the extent of space:

*fossās quindecim pedēs lātās, trenches fifteen feet broad.*  
*quadrāgintā annōs vixit, he lived forty years.*

1. Emphasis is sometimes given by using the preposition *per*, as:

*lūdi per decem diēs, games for ten days.*

17. Proper names of towns and of small islands or peninsulas are put in the accusative to denote the *end* or *limit* toward which the motion of the verb is directed:

*missi lēgātī Athēnās sunt, ambassadors were sent to Athens.*

1. The accusatives domum and rūs are used like proper names of towns:

*domum reductus est, he was conducted home.*  
*ego rūs ibō, I shall go into the country.*

2. Other designations of place than those mentioned above require a preposition (*in* or *ad*) to denote the limit of motion:

*in Itāliam vēnit, he came into Italy.*

*legiōnēs ad urbem addūcit, he is leading the legions to (or toward) the city.*

3. When domum is modified in any way, except by a possessive pronoun or a genitive, the preposition *in* is commonly used:

*in illam domum, into that house.*  
*domōs suās, to their homes.*

18. An exclamation, if limited by an adjective or a genitive, may be expressed by the accusative;



*mē miserum, ah, wretched me! or dear, dear me!*  
*ō fallācem spem, oh, deceptive hope!*

## REFERENCES FOR ACCUSATIVE

[H. 403-421; (370-381); LM. 495-524; A. 387-397, 423-429;  
 (237-240, 258); G. 329-343; B. 172-185.]

## 19. Translate:

1. Caesar asked them for grain. 15
2. They will choose him consul. 14
3. Dear me, I am going to Rome! 18 - 17
4. We will demand of them fifty ships. 15
5. She remained in the city for ten days. 16
6. They made a wall fifteen feet high. 16
7. He set out for his home. 17
8. For many days he concealed the deed from his father. 16
9. The enemy marched into Italy. 17
10. The boy and his mother were free. 16

## LESSON 3

## THE GENITIVE CASE

20. The genitive is ordinarily used to express the dependence of one noun upon another. This relation is often, but not always, expressed in English by *of* or *'s* or *s'*:  
*Alexandri equus, Alexander's horse, or the horse of Alexander.*

21. If a noun of *action* or *feeling* is limited by another noun, the dependent genitive expresses either

1. the subject of the action or feeling, and is called the *subjective genitive*:  
*amor patris, the love of a father, or a father's love* (i.e. *the love felt by a father*); or

2. the object of the action or feeling, called the *objective genitive*:

*amor patris, love for father (i.e. the love toward a father).*

22. The genitive is used to denote *quality*, but only when the limiting noun is modified by an adjective:

*vir summae virtutis, a man of the highest courage.*

1. If the noun expressing the quality is not modified, the idea of quality is expressed by an adjective rather than a genitive. For example, "a man of courage" is not to be rendered *vir virtutis*, but *vir fortis*.

23. **Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.** — The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is taken:

*duo milia peditum, two thousand foot soldiers.*

*minus dubitationis, less hesitation.*

The following are a few of the common words followed by this construction:

*plūs, more.*

*plūrimum, most.*

*multum, much.*

*minus, less.*

*paulum, little.*

*nihil, nothing.*

*satis, enough.*

*parum, not enough.*

*quod, quid, which, what.*

*aliquid, something.*

1. Numerals and *quidam* are generally followed by *ex* or *dē* and the ablative, rather than a partitive genitive. Also occasionally other words:

*ūnus ex militibus, one of the soldiers.*

*pauci dē nostris cadunt, a few of our men fall.*

24. The genitive is used with many adjectives to *limit the extent of their application*. Such adjectives are those

signifying *desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fullness*, and their opposites:

**peritus belli**, *skilled in war.*

**cupidus rērum novārum**, *eager for revolution.*

Some of the common adjectives of this class are:

**cupidus**, *eager, desirous.*

**cōnsciū**, *conscious, aware.*

**peritus**, *experienced, skillful.*

**insuētus**, *unaccustomed, inexperienced.*

**plēnus**, *full.*

**memor**, *mindful, remembering.*

**expers**, *having no part, free from.*

**potēns**, *ruling, controlling.*

**particeps**, *sharing.*

25. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*—**memini**, **reminiscor**, and **obliscor**—generally take

1. the genitive when referring to *persons*:

**oblitus sum mei**, *I have forgotten myself.*

2. sometimes the genitive, and sometimes the accusative, when referring to *things*. The object is regularly accusative when it is a neuter pronoun:

**meministine nōmina**, *do you remember the names?*

**reminiscere veteris incommodi**, *remember the former disaster.*

**haec memini**, *I remember this.*

26. Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting*, take the genitive to express the charge:

**accūsātus est prōditionis**, *he was charged with treason.*

27. The impersonal verbs **paenitet**, *repent*; **miseret**, *pity*; **taedet**, *be weary*; **pudet**, *be ashamed*; **piget**, *disgusts*, take the accusative to express the *person affected*, and the

genitive to express the *person* or *thing* toward whom the feeling is directed:

*tui mē miseret, I pity you* (literally, *it pities me of you*).  
*eum taedet vitae, he is tired of life.*

1. *misereor* also governs the genitive:

*miserēmini sociōrum, pity the allies.*

28. *Interest* and *rēfert*, *it interests* or *concerns* take the genitive of the person concerned; but in the case of the personal pronoun the ablative singular feminine of the possessive is generally used:

*patris interest, it concerns the father.*

*magis rei pūblīcae interest quā meā, it concerns the public welfare more than me.*

29. A few neuter adjectives of quantity are put in the genitive with verbs of valuing to denote the amount of estimation. Such genitives are:

*māgni, plūris, plūrimi; parvi, minōris, minimi; tanti, quanti.*

The common verbs with which these genitives are used are: *aestimō, faciō, putō, habeo*, and *sum*:

*ea māgni aestimantur, those things are highly valued* (literally, *those things are estimated of great (value)*).

*est mihi tanti, it is worth my while* (literally, *it is of so much to me*).

#### REFERENCES FOR GENITIVES

[H. 437-458; (393-410); LM. 549-592; A. 342-355, 359, b; (213-222); G. 360-382; B. 194-211.]

## 30. Translate:

1. They were very skillful in military affairs.<sup>1</sup> 24
2. He forgot his name. 25
3. Love for his country made him brave. 26
4. They asked him his brother's name. 26
5. He was a man of great size, but not of courage.
6. She has enough money. 23
7. Five of the soldiers went to Athens. 23-1
8. She pities them. 27
9. How valuable is that book? 29
10. This interests him very much.

## LESSON 4

## THE DATIVE CASE

31. **Indirect Object.** — The dative is used to express the object that is *indirectly affected* by the action of the verb:

***hanc pecūniam mihi dat, he gives me this money*** (*pecūniam* is the direct, and *mihi* the indirect object).

1. With certain verbs that imply motion it is often difficult to distinguish between the dative of the indirect object and the accusative of the limit of motion (cf. 17). Generally the accusative (with or without a preposition) is used when the idea of motion prevails:

***litterās quās ad Pompēium scripsi, the letter which I have written (and sent) to Pompey.***

***mihi litterās mittere, to send a letter to me.***

32. Most verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command*,

<sup>1</sup> *rēs militāria.*

*obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, <sup>trust</sup> pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

Some of the more common of these verbs are :

**persuādeō, persuade.**

**pāreō, obey.**

**parcō, spare.**

**imperō, order.**

**resistō, resist.**

**fidō, cōfidō, trust.**

**licet, it is permitted.**

**crēdō, believe, trust.**

**faveō, favor.**

**placeō, please.**

**ignōscō, pardon.**

**invidēō, envy.**

**noceō, harm.**

**studeō, be eager for.**

**cūr mihi invidēs, why do you envy me?**

**huic imperat, he orders him.**

1. Some verbs apparently of the same meaning govern the accusative; such as **iubeō, order**; **dēlectō, please**; **iuvō, adiuvō, help**; **laedō, injure**.

2. If these verbs are used in the passive, the dative is retained and the verbs are impersonal :

**nōbīs persuādētur, we are persuaded.**

33. Most verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super**, and sometimes **circum**, govern the dative case. If transitive, such verbs may take an accusative besides :

**cōsiliis obstāre, to oppose plans.**

**pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit, he puts honor before money.**

34. **Dative of Possession.** — The English verb *have* is often expressed in Latin by the dative and some form of **sum**. The possessor is expressed by the dative, and the object possessed is the subject of **sum**.

The English sentence, "The master has a book," may be expressed in either of the following ways:

1. **magistrō est liber.**
2. **magister habet librum.**

35. The dative is used with many adjectives of *fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination*, and their opposites.

Some of the more common adjectives are:

<b>similis</b> , <i>like.</i>	<b>aptus</b> , <i>suitable for.</i>
<b>dissimilis</b> , <i>unlike.</i>	<b>pār</b> , <i>equal to.</i>
<b>adversus</b> , <i>opposite.</i>	<b>aequus</b> , <i>equal to.</i>
<b>iniquus</b> , <i>not equal to.</i>	<b>amicus</b> , <i>friendly.</i>
<b>proximus</b> , <i>next to.</i>	<b>cārus</b> , <i>dear.</i>
<b>ūtilis</b> , <i>useful to.</i>	<b>familiāris</b> , <i>friendly to.</i>
<b>idōneus</b> , <i>suitable for.</i>	<b>aliēnus</b> , <i>unfavorable, foreign.</i>

**castris idōneum locum**, *a place suitable for a camp.*

**filius patri similis**, *a son like his father.*

I. **Similis** and a few others also sometimes govern the genitive (cf. 24).

36. **Dative of Reference.**—The dative is used to denote the person to whom the thought of the sentence is of special interest. This dative is translated into English in a variety of ways:

**laudāvit mihi frātre**, *he praised my brother.* (*mihi* shows that it was out of regard for me, while *meum* would imply no such motive.)

**nōbis divitēs esse volumus**, *we wish to be rich for ourselves.*

37. **Dative of Purpose or End.**—The dative is often used to denote the *purpose, use, or result* of a thing, often

with another dative of the person *for whom*. This construction is most common with the verb *sum*:

*māgnō ūsul nostris fuit, it was a great help to our men*  
(literally, *it was for a great help to our men*).

*tertiām aciem nostris subsidiō misit, he sent the third line*  
*as a relief to our men*.

The datives most frequently used are: *ūsul, subsidiō, praesidiō, auxiliō, cūrae, mūneri, odiō, bonō, impedimentō*.

## REFERENCES FOR DATIVES

[H. 422-436; (382-392); LM. 525-548; A. 361-385; (224-236); G. 344-359; B. 186-193.]

## 38. Translate:

1. You and your sister gave him this.
2. The soldiers obey the general.
3. He wrote a letter to his mother.
4. Caesar was persuaded.
5. The wall will be a great hindrance to the enemy.
6. He put<sup>1</sup> an officer in charge of the legion.
7. The farmer had<sup>2</sup> fertile fields.
8. There was a hill opposite the town.
9. My<sup>3</sup> brother went to Corinth.
10. He took the lead of all his friends.

## LESSON 5

## THE ABLATIVE CASE

39. Verbs indicating *separation* or *privation* take an ablative to denote the thing from which the separation takes place. A preposition, *ab* or *ex*, is often used with

<sup>1</sup> Put in charge of = *praefficiō*.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use the verb *habēō*.

<sup>3</sup> Do not use *meus*; express the idea in another way.



these verbs, and regularly when the ablative denotes a person :

*māgnō mē metū liberābis, you will free me from great fear.*

*sēcernantur ā nōbīs, let them be separated from us.*

*auxiliū eget, he needs help.*

*dē prōvinciā dēcēdere, to withdraw from one's province.*

40. The ablative, with or without a preposition, *dē, ex*, or *ab*, is used to denote the *source* from which a thing is derived, or the *material* of which it consists.

*Source* — *amplissimō genere nātus, born of an influential family.*

*Material* (*ex* is regularly used) — *pōcula ex aurō, cups of gold.* An adjective could also be used, as *pōcula aurea*. Also a genitive of material, *pōcula auri*.

41. The ablative with *ā* or *ab* is used with passive verbs to denote the *personal agent* ;

*ab his fit initium, a beginning is made by them.*

42. An ablative may be used with a comparative instead of *quam*, *than*, and a nominative or accusative :

*patria mihi vitā cārīor est, my country is dearer to me than life (quam vitā could be used instead of vitā).*

*tui studiōsior sum quam illius, I am fonder of you than of him (here the ablative could not be used).*

43. The ablative may denote the *cause*, *means*, or *instrument* :

*fortūnā amici gaudeō, I rejoice at the good fortune of my friend (i.e. on account of, etc.).*

*lacte atque pecore vivunt, they live upon milk and flesh (i.e. by means of milk and flesh).*

1. The ablative of the *agent* (which requires *a* or *ab*) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of *means* or *instrument*, which uses no preposition. See 41.

44. The deponent verbs *ūtōr, use*; *fruor, enjoy*; *fungor, perform*; *potior, get possession of*; *veŕcor, eat*; and their compounds, govern the ablative:

*vitā fruītur, he enjoys life.*

45. The ablative, with or without *cum*, may be used to express the *manner* of an action. If the noun is modified by an adjective, *cum* is often omitted, otherwise *cum* is regularly used.

*Allobrogēs māgnā cum cūrā suās finis tuentur, the Allobroges guard their own territory with great care.* (Note the position of *cum*; *māgnā curā* would also mean *with great care.*)

*cum celeritatē vēnit, he came with speed (speedily).*

1. Some nouns that are unmodified express manner without *cum*:

*iūre, rightly.*

*iniūriā, wrongly.*

*vi, by force, forcibly.*

*cōsiliō, on purpose.*

*casū, by chance.*

*cōsuetūdine, mōre, according to custom.*

46. To denote *accompaniment*, the ablative is used with *cum*. But *cum* is often omitted in military expressions where an adjective is used:

*cum comitatibus profectus est, he set out with his attendants.*

**47. Ablative of Specification.** — The ablative is used with nouns, verbs, and adjectives to show that *in respect to which* the statement applies :

*reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, they excel the rest of the Gauls in courage.*

*claudus pede, lame in his foot.*

1. Note the phrases :

*minor nātū, younger* (literally, *less in respect to age or birth*).  
*māior nātū, older.*

2. On this principle the adjectives *dignus* and *indignus* govern the ablative :

*dignī honōre, worthy of honor.*

**48. Ablative of Degree of Difference.** — With words expressing comparison the ablative is used to denote the amount or degree of difference between the objects. Especially common are the ablatives *paulō, little* ; *multō, much* ; *tantō, quantō, hōc, quō*.

*tribus pedibus altior, three feet higher* (literally, *higher by three feet*).

*multō mē vigilāre ācrius, that I watch much more sharply* (literally, *more sharply by much*).

**49. Ablative of Quality.** — The ablative, modified by an adjective or genitive, is used to denote quality :

*summā virtūte adulēscēns, a youth of the highest worth.*

1. The genitive case likewise may describe a noun, or express quality. See 22.

**50. The Ablative of Price.** — The definite price of a thing is expressed by the ablative :

*servum quinque minis ēmit, he bought the slave for five minae.*

1. For the genitive of indefinite price, see 29.

51. Ablative of Time. — The ablative is used to express

1. Time *when* an action takes place :

*posterō diē movet castra, on the next day he moves his camp.*

2. Time *within which* an action takes place. The preposition *in* is sometimes used :

*his paucis diēbus, within these few days.*

1. For the accusative of the *duration of time*, see 16.

52. The ablative absolute is explained in the lesson on the participle. See 89.

#### REFERENCES FOR ABLATIVE

[H. 459-487; (411-429); LM. 596-655; A. 398-420, 423, 426; (242-253); G. 384-408; B. 213-226.]

53. Translate :

1. Rome was much larger than Corinth. 2/2
2. For five days they refrained from battle. 16.
3. She was born of a German family. 4/0
4. It is very important<sup>1</sup> for me to remember this. 29
5. He performed his task very carefully. 4/5
6. On the third<sup>5</sup> day, through the bravery of his troops, 4/3  
Caesar got possession of the town.
7. This river is two feet wider than that one. 242.
8. Aspasia was famous for her wisdom. 4/3
9. Our ancestors were men of great ability. 4/0
10. He was slain by a sword by one of the soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> See 29.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

## LESSON 6

## REVIEW AND SIGHT PRACTICE

54. Review the principles of syntax in sections 1-51.

55. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words:

- |                                      |                  |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. faciō. <i>facere fieri factum</i> | 25. petō.        |
| 2. fugō. <sup>1</sup> <i>fug</i>     | 26. rūs.         |
| 3. soror. <i>in</i>                  | 27. mittō.       |
| 4. frāter. <i>fratris</i>            | 28. postulō.     |
| 5. habeo. <i>esse in manu</i>        | 29. mūrus.       |
| 6. miles.                            | 30. maneo.       |
| 7. dō. <i>dare de dedit datum</i>    | 31. proficiscor. |
| 8. studium.                          | 32. satis.       |
| 9. video.                            | 33. parum.       |
| 10. opus.                            | 34. miseret.     |
| 11. cōlō.                            | 35. pudet.       |
| 12. frūmentum.                       | 36. persuādeō.   |
| 13. peritus.                         | 37. crēdō.       |
| 14. cupidus.                         | 38. imperō.      |
| 15. memini. <sup>2</sup>             | 39. dēlectō.     |
| 16. reminiscor.                      | 40. liberō.      |
| 17. obliviscor.                      | 41. egeō.        |
| 18. similis.                         | 42. fungor.      |
| 19. praesidium.                      | 43. potior.      |
| 20. ūsus.                            | 44. finis.       |
| 21. mille. <sup>3</sup>              | 45. adulēscēns.  |
| 22. creō.                            | 46. nāscor.      |
| 23. poscō.                           | 47. clārus.      |
| 24. quaerō.                          | 48. nanciscor.   |

<sup>1</sup> Do not confuse this with fugiō.

<sup>2</sup> Perfect in form, but present in meaning.

<sup>3</sup> Look up its declension.

56. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs in 55.

57. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 55, illustrating the grammatical principles of 1-51. These sentences may be given for oral drill or a written exercise.

## LESSON 7

### PRONOUNS: DEMONSTRATIVE, PERSONAL, REFLEXIVE, POSSESSIVE

58. Demonstrative pronouns point out what object is referred to, and show whether it is *here* or *there*.

They are :

1. *hic, this* (i.e. *the object that is near where I am*).
2. *iste, that* (*that near you*).
3. *ille, that* (*that yonder, over there, not near the speaker*).

59. *Hic* is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the *first person*. It is used as follows :

1. To point out the object that is near the speaker (in time, place, thought, or on the written page).
2. To refer to the *present* as contrasted with the *past* :  
*haec tempora, modern times, present times.*

3. To refer to what follows :

*hinc belli haec fuit causa, the cause of this war was as follows.*

4. Sometimes to refer to what precedes :

*his Caesar ita respondit, to them* (the persons just mentioned) *Caesar thus replied.*

5. In reference to two objects previously mentioned, *hic* generally refers to the latter one, and is translated,

*the latter.* Ille refers to the former, and is translated *the former*.

[H. 505-507; (450); LM. 1049-1055; A. 296, 297; (102, a, b); G. 305-307; B. 246.]<sup>1</sup>

60. Iste is called the demonstrative of the second person. It often implies contempt, as:

iste **Manlius**, *that* (fellow) *Manlius* of yours.

[H. 507, 3; (450); LM. 1053; A. 297, a, b, e, f; (102, c); G. 306; B. 246, 4.]

61. Ille is called the demonstrative of the third person. It is often translated:

1. *The former* [see 59, 5].

2. *That well-known, that notorious, that famous*, etc.

**Magnus ille Alexander**, *that famous Alexander the Great*.

(Note the position of ille.)

62. Learn the following adverbs of place:

PLACE WHERE	PLACE TO WHICH	PLACE FROM WHICH
<b>hic</b> , <i>here</i> .	<b>hūc</b> , <i>hither</i> .	<b>hinc</b> , <i>hence</i> .
<b>istīc</b> , <i>there</i> .	<b>istūc</b> , <i>thither</i> .	<b>istinc</b> , <i>thence</i> .
<b>illīc</b> , <i>there</i> .	<b>illūc</b> , <i>thither</i> .	<b>illinc</b> , <i>thence</i> .

63. The determinative pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id**, *that*, is not as strong as **ille**. It is used

1. As a pronoun of the third person, meaning *he, she, it, they*, when one needs to be expressed. See 64.

As an antecedent of the relative, **is quī**, *he, who*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Grammatical reference will now be given, as far as is possible, after each section.

2. The English expression "that of " is not expressed by **is** and a genitive, but by a genitive alone or by the repetition of the noun to which "that" refers :

*in exercitū Sullae et postea in Crassi fuerat, he had been in the army of Sulla, and afterwards in that of Crassus.*

3. **Is** has often the force of *tālis*, *such* :

*nōn sum is qui terrear, I am not such a person as to be frightened.*

[H. 508; (451); LM. 1056-1058; A. 297, b, d, e, f; (102, d); G. 308; B. 247.]

64. The personal pronouns **ego, I; tū, you; is, ea, id, he, she, it**, are used as subjects only to show emphasis or avoid ambiguity; *tē vocō, I'm calling you*; but *ego tē vocō, I (emphatic) am calling you* (such emphasis might be expressed in English by the translation, "It is I who am calling you").

1. The genitive forms **mei, tui, sui, vestri, nostri**, are chiefly used as objective genitives. See 21, 2. The genitive plural forms in **-ūm (nostrū, vestrū)** are generally used as partitive genitives :

*dēsiderium vestri, longing for you.*

*nēmō vestrū, no one of you.*

2. Never express *my, your, our*, etc., by the genitive of the pronoun. Use the proper possessive adjective. See 67.

[H. 500; (446, N. 3); LM. 456, 1041; A. 295; (194); G. 304; B. 242.]

65. A reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence. There are two uses.

1. It may refer to the subject of the clause in which it stands (direct reflexive):

*sē videt, he sees himself.*



2. It may be used in a subordinate clause and refer, not to the subject of its own clause, but to the subject of the principal clause (indirect reflexive):

*cum intellegeret sibi bellum gerendum, when he perceived that he must wage war.* (Sibi refers to the subject of intellegeret.)

66. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are also used as reflexives. But there is a special reflexive for the third person:

*sui*, etc., *himself, herself, itself*; (plural) *themselves*.

[H. 174, 502; (448, 449); LM. 1042-1046; A. 299-301; (196); G. 309, 520, 521; B. 244.]

67. The possessive pronouns are:

*meus, my, mine*; *noster, our, ours*; *tuus, your, yours*; *vester, your, yours* (plural); *suus, his, hers, its, their, theirs* (reflexive).

Note the following:

1. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension, and agree in gender, number, and case with the noun *to which they belong*, and not *with the noun to which they refer*:

*suam matrem occidit, he slew his own mother.*

2. They are generally not expressed in Latin, except for the purpose of clearness:

*videō patrem, I see my father.* (To express *I see your father* it would be necessary to use *videō tuum patrem*.)

3. The possessive pronouns of the third person in English, *his, hers, its, their*, may refer either to the subject of the verb (*i.e.* be reflexive), or refer to some other person

than the subject. When reflexive, *suus* must be used, otherwise use the genitive of *is*:

*laudavit suum frātre*m, *he praised his brother*. (*ēius frātre*m would mean *his brother*, but some one else's brother.)

[H. 176, 501, 502, 503, 1; (447, 449, 1. 1); LM. 271, 1048; A. 299, 302; (196, h, 197); G. 309, 312; B. 243, 86.]

**68. Reciprocal Pronouns.**—The Latin has no special reciprocal pronoun (*each other, one another*). The reciprocal idea is expressed by the phrases *inter nōs*, *inter vōs*, *inter sē*. See 73, 2.

*obsidēs inter sē dedērunt*, *they gave one another hostages* (literally, *they gave hostages among themselves*).

[H. 502, 1; (448, N.); LM. 1047; A. 301, f, 145, c; (196, f); G. 221; B. 245.]

**69. Summary of personal, reflexive, and possessive pronouns:**

	PERSONAL	REFLEXIVE	POSSESSIVE
FIRST PERSON	ego	mei <sup>1</sup>	meus, -a, -um, <i>my, mine</i> . noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i> .
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui <sup>1</sup>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>your, yours</i> (sing.). vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> (pl.).
THIRD PERSON	is, ea, id	sui <sup>1</sup>	suus, -a, -um, <i>his, his</i> <i>own, hers, her own</i> , etc. (reflexive). When not reflexive, use genitive of <i>is, ea, id</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Why is there no nominative form for reflexives?

## 70. Translate :

1. You have convinced yourselves.
2. He praised his own friends, but blamed his.
3. I am the one<sup>1</sup> that is doing this.
4. We love each other.
5. They saw her mother on the street.
6. The former is his friend, the latter my enemy.
7. She said that<sup>2</sup> they would obey her.
8. Many of us will be freed from fear.
9. He sold her house and that of his brother..
10. The following are my reasons.

## LESSON 8

## PRONOUNS (CONTINUED). CORRELATIVES

**71. Relative Pronouns.** — The relative pronoun **qui, quae, quod, who, which, that**, agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands :

**pecūnia quam habeo, the money that I have.** (Here **quam** is accusative because it is the direct object of **habeo**.)

**gladius quō pugnābat, the sword with which he fought.** (Here **quō** is ablative because it expresses the instrument.)

1. The relative generally agrees in gender and number with a predicate noun of its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number :

**Celtae, quae est tertiā pars, the Celts, who are the third part.**

2. Sometimes the relative takes its gender and number from the *real meaning* of its antecedent, rather than its actual form :

<sup>1</sup> See 64.    <sup>2</sup> *that . . . obey* : use accusative and future infinitive.

**nostra qui adsumus salūs**, *the safety of us who are present*.  
(Here **qui** agrees with **nostrū** implied in **nostra**.)

3. The antecedent of the relative is sometimes omitted, especially if it is indefinite :

**sunt qui**, etc., *there are men who*.

4. In English the relative is sometimes omitted, but *never* in Latin. Thus, *the book I have* must be expressed in Latin **liber quem habeo**.

5. The antecedent of the relative is often incorporated in the relative clause :

**urbem quam statuo vestra est**, *the city which I am building is yours* (literally, *what city I am building is yours*).

6. A relative is used at the beginning of a sentence or clause, where in English a demonstrative or personal pronoun would be used :

**quae cum ita sint**, *since these things are so*.

**quō factum est**, *from this it resulted*.

7. A relative clause in Latin is often used when the corresponding construction is not employed in English :

*the bystanders*, **qui adsunt** (literally, *those who are present*).  
*the standard bearer*, **qui aquilam ferēbat** (literally, *he who carried the eagle*).

*the existing laws*, **lēgēs quae nunc sunt** (literally, *the laws which now exist [are]*).

*the plaintiff*, **ille qui petit** (literally, *he who sues*).

[H. 396, 510; (445); LM. 820-827; A. 304-308; (198, 199, 201); G. 610-616; B. 250, 251.]

72. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what*

one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. **Quis** is the least definite, and **quidam** the most definite. The meanings of the following indefinite pronouns should be thoroughly learned :

**quis** (generally used only after **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**), *some one, any one.*

**aliquis**, *some one, any one.*

**quisquam**, *any one* (used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences).

**quivis** } *any one you please.*  
**quilibet** }

**quisque**, *each.*

**quidam**, *a certain, a.*

1. **Quis**, *some, any*, is never the first word in its clause :

**st̄ quid his . . . accidat**, *if anything should happen to these.*

2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *every*. It is not often used in the plural. **quisque** regularly follows the word to which it belongs.

3. **Quisque** is often used with the superlative:

**optimus quisque**, *all the best* (literally, *each best one*).

[H. 512; (455-458); LM. 1064-1072; A. 309-314; (202); G. 313-318; B. 252.]

73. **Alius**, *other* (of more than two), and **alter**, *other* (of two only), are used idiomatically as follows :

1. In pairs, **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another*; **alter, alter**, *the one . . . the other*; **alter exercitum perdidit, alter vēdidit**, *one ruined the army, the other sold it.*

2. When repeated in different cases or when used with the corresponding adverb, they express in a condensed form various idiomatic phrases :

**alius alium incūsat**, *one accuses one, another another* (literally, *another accuses another*, i.e. *each one accuses some one else*).

**alii aliam in partem**, (*they fled*) *some in one direction, others in another*.

[H. 516; (459); LM. 1047; A. 315; (203); G. 319; B. 253.]

74. **Ipse, self**, emphasizes the substantive with which it is used. Do not confuse it with the reflexive (65, 66). "Self" in English may be either intensive or reflexive, while the Latin has a special word for each:

**sē videt**, *he sees himself* (reflexive).

**ipse puerum videt**, *he himself sees the boy* (intensive).

Note the following uses and meanings of **ipse**:

1. *very, mere, in person, own accord, etc.*

**eō ipsō diē**, *on that very day*.

**ipsā audāciā**, *by mere audacity*.

**ipse aderat**, *he was present in person*.

**valvae sē ipsae aperuērunt**, *the doors opened of their own accord*.

2. When it emphasizes a reflexive, it is put in the nominative rather than in agreement with the reflexive:

**sē ipse continēre nōn potest**, *he cannot contain himself* (not **sē ipsum**).

3. It is sometimes used instead of an indirect reflexive:  
**lēgātōs misit qui ipsi vitam peterent**, *he sent messengers to beg life for himself* (here **ipsi** is used instead of **sibi**).

[H. 509; (452); LM. 1060-1062; A. 298, c-f, 300, b; (195, f-1); G. 311; B. 249.]

75. The interrogative pronoun is **quis** (**quī**), **quae**, **quid** (**quod**), *who, which, what?* The forms **quī** and **quod** are generally used as interrogative adjectives:

**quī locus est**, *what place is there?*

**Quis** and **quid** are generally used as pronouns (i.e. no noun is expressed):

**quis clārior Themistocle**, *who is more famous than Themistocles?*

[H. 511; (454); LM. 285; A. 148, 149; (104); G. 106; B. 90.]

76. **Idem**, *the same*, is often equivalent to the English *likewise, at the same time, also, yet*:

**quod idem mihi contigit**, *which likewise (or also) happened to me* (literally, *which, the same thing*).

**quidquid honestum est, idem est ūtile**, *whatever is honorable is at the same time advantageous*.

**cum . . . dicat, negat idem**, *although he says, etc., yet he denies, etc.* (literally, *he, the same man, denies*).

1. For **idem atque (ac)**, *the same as*, see 82, 3.

[H. 508; (451, 3, 5); LM. 1059; A. 298, a, b; (195, e); G. 310; B. 248.]

77. Translate:

1. I witnessed those deeds with my own eyes.
2. What road did he fortify?
3. The boy, whose book I have, is not here to-day.
4. He blamed himself for his laziness.
5. The Rhine, which is a river in Europe, is one hundred feet wide.
6. All the houses I had were burned.
7. Some did one thing, others another.

8. The perpetrators<sup>1</sup> of the crime have left the city.
9. That also belongs to me.<sup>2</sup>
10. Each one fled to the very gates of the city.

## LESSON 9

### QUESTIONS. NEGATIVE CONNECTIVES

78. Direct questions in Latin are not distinguished by the order of the words, as in English. They are introduced by the following special words:

1. **-ne.** This is an enclitic, and is added to the emphatic word, generally the first word. Such a question merely asks for information:

**mānsitne Rōmae?** *did he stay at Rome?*

2. **nōne.** This particle implies that the answer "yes" is expected:

**nōne mānsit Rōmae?** *didn't he stay at Rome, or he staid at Rome, didn't he?* (answer "yes" expected).

3. **num.** This particle implies the answer "no."  
**num mānsit Rōmae?** *did he stay at Rome?* or *he didn't stay at Rome, did he?* (answer "no" expected).

[H. 378; (351, N. 1-3); LM. 697-701; A. 330-333; (210); G. 454-456; B. 162, 2.]

79. Direct questions that are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs, such as **quis**, **qui**, **ubi**, **quālis**, **quot**, etc., are like the corresponding English questions, and involve no difficulties. See 75.

<sup>1</sup> What does this noun really mean?

<sup>2</sup> *belongs to me* = *is mine*.



80. In double or alternative questions, *utrum*, *-ne*, *whether*, or occasionally no particle at all, is used in the first member; in the second, *an*, *or*, is used. In direct questions, if the second member is negative, *annōn*, *or not*, is used; in indirect questions, *necne*.

The following table summarizes the various forms:

FIRST MEMBER	SECOND AND SUBSEQUENT MEMBERS
<i>utrum</i> , <i>whether</i> .	<i>an</i> , <i>or</i> .
<i>-ne</i> .	<i>an</i> . <i>annōn</i> .
—	<i>an</i> . <i>annōn</i> .

#### EXAMPLES:

<i>utrum bonum an malum est?</i>	} <i>is it good or bad?</i>
<i>bonumne an malum est?</i>	
<i>bonum an malum est?</i>	

*mānsitne Rōmae annōn?* *did he stay at Rome or not?*

[H. 380; (353); LM. 705; A. 334, 335; (211); G. 458; B. 162, 4.]

81. **Answers.**—Latin has no words meaning exclusively “yes” or “no.” Answers are expressed as follows:

1. By repeating the verb:

*mānsitne Rōmae?* *did he stay at Rome?* *mānsit*, *yes* (or *nōn mānsit*, *no*).

2. By the following adverbs and phrases:

For “yes,”

*ita*, *so*, *true*, etc.

*ita est*, *it is so*, etc.

*etiam*, *even so*, *yes*, etc.

*sānē*, *surely*, *no doubt*, etc.

*vērō*, *in truth*, *true*, *no doubt*, etc.

*certē*, *certainly*, *unquestionably*, etc.; and others.

For "no,"

*nōn, not (so).*

*minimē, not at all.*

*nūllō modō, by no means.*

*nōn quidem, certainly not ; why, no ; etc. ; and others.*

[H. 379 ; (352) ; LM. 703, 704 ; A. 336, 337 ; (212) ; G. 471 ; B. 162, 5.]

**§2. Connectives.** — Note the following facts about the connection of coördinate words and clauses :

1. *et* is the most common particle of connection, and unites likes and unlikes.

2. *-que* (enclitic) unites more closely than *et*. It combines things that belong closely to each other, and is appended to the first word of its clause (unless that word is a preposition of one syllable).

*periculis insidisque, dangers and plots.*

3. *atque (ac)* generally emphasizes the second of the two things mentioned, as the English "and also," "and in fact," "and indeed." After words of *likeness* and *difference*, *atque (ac)* may have the force of *as, than*. *Ac* never stands before vowels or *h*.

*intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs, within the walls, and, in fact, in the heart of the city are the enemies.*

*ego idem sentiō ac tū, I think the same as you.*

4. *etiam, even, still*, emphasizes the word to which it belongs, and which it generally precedes.

5. *quoque, also*, immediately follows the word to which it belongs.

6. When three or more words are to be connected, either (1) connect all by *et*, or (2) omit all conjunctions, or (3) connect the last two by *-que*.

uxōrēs, et liberī, et bona,	} <i>wives, children, and property.</i>
uxōrēs, liberī, bona,	
uxōrēs, liberī, bonaque,	

7. Instead of *et* and the negative, *neque* (*nec*) and the positive is generally used in Latin. Such combinations give us the following phrases:

<i>and not,</i>	<i>neque (nec),</i>	<i>literally, nor,</i>
<i>and no,</i>	<i>neque ūllus,</i>	<i>nor any,</i>
<i>and never,</i>	<i>neque umquam,</i>	<i>nor ever,</i>
<i>and no one,</i>	<i>neque quisquam,</i>	<i>nor any one,</i>
<i>and nothing,</i>	<i>neque quidquam,</i>	<i>nor anything.</i>

8. Two adjectives belonging to one noun are connected by *et*, and generally follow the noun :

*vir clārus et fortis, a famous brave man.*

[H. 314, 315; (310); LM. 755-761; A. 323, 324; (156); G. 475-480; B. 341.]

83. Translate :

1. He will go to Rome, will he not?
2. They had many fields, buildings, and cattle.
3. Whose book is that on the table?
4. He was a general, and no one obeyed him.
5. Do you remember? No.
6. Will he not use his sword?
7. Did he fight or stay in camp?
8. Will you free us from danger? No, indeed.
9. A Roman is a brave, faithful soldier.
10. The Gauls plundered the houses, and, indeed, the very temples of Rome.

### THE PARTICIPLE—ITS USES AND TENSES

84. The participle is a verbal adjective. As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, *not absolutely*, as in the indicative mood, *but with reference to the time of the verb* of the clause in which it stands. The participle has the following tenses:

*Present*: representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb:

**videō eum id agentem**, *I see him as he DOES it* (literally, *him doing it*).

**videbā eum id agentem**, *I saw him as he WAS DOING it*.

**videbō eum id agentem**, *I shall see him as he WILL BE DOING it*.

Note that the participle in these examples expresses no absolute time. It describes an action that *is going on* at the time of the main verb.

*Perfect*: representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb:

**cohortātus suōs abiit**, *he ENCOURAGED his troops, and went away* (literally, *having encouraged his troops, he went away*).

**cohortātus suōs abit**, *he ENCOURAGES his troops, and goes away*.

**cohortātus suōs abibit**, *he WILL ENCOURAGE his troops, and then go away*.

Note again in these examples the various meanings of the perfect participle, yet they all express *action that is completed* before the action of the main verb begins.

*Future*: expressing ~~sub~~sequent action:

**vidēbam eum id actūrum**, *I saw him when he was intending to do it.*

[H. 636, 640; (548, 550); LM. 1009-1011; A. 488-493; (289, 290); G. 282, 283; B. 336.]

85. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participle may be formed from the stems obtained from the principal parts:

Present stem. Perf. act. stem. Perf. pass. stem.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.—**agō**, **age|re** **ēg|ī** **āct|us**

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	pres. stem + <b>ns</b>	wanting
FUTURE	perf. pass. stem + <b>ūrus</b>	<i>Gerundive.</i> Pres. stem + <b>ndus</b>
PERFECT	wanting	the last one of the principal parts

1. Deponent verbs have the participles of both voices.
2. The missing perfect active participle is supplied by the perfect passive participle of the deponent verbs; if there is no deponent verb with the necessary meaning, clauses with **cum**, **postquam**, etc., may be used:

*having done this, he went away*, **cum id fēcisset**, **ablit.**

3. The missing present passive participle is supplied by clauses with **dum**, **cum**, or **quod**.

4. The perfect participles of some deponents are used practically like our present participle :

*ūsus, using.*

*secūtus, following.*

*arbitrātus, ratus, thinking.*

*solitus, accustomed.*

*ausus, daring.*

And some others.

[H. 222, 1, 640, 1, 4, 5; (231, 550, N. 4 and 5); LM. 393-401; A. 190, a, b, 491, 493; (135, a, 290 b, c, d); G. 128, 585 R.; B. 112, a, 336, 5, 356, 2.]

86. Form all the participles (giving the English meanings) of the following verbs :

*dō, dare, dedi, datus, give.*

*videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, see.*

*faciō, facere, fēci, factus, make, do.*

*sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow.*

*mūniō, mūnīre, mūnivi, mūnitus, fortify.*

87. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. They may express *time, condition, cause, manner, means, concession, circumstance.*

Study carefully the following examples which show the various relations that the participle expresses :

1. *Time.*

*militēs cohortātus . . . proeli committendi signum dedit,*  
*after he had encouraged his soldiers, he gave the signal to*  
*begin battle.*

2. *Condition.*

*damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, if condemned, the punish-*  
*ment must follow.*

3. *Cause.*

**hōrum auctōritāte finitimi adducti retinent**, *since their neighbors were influenced by their authority, they retained.*

4. *Manner.*

**Rōmāni grātulantēs Horātium accipiunt**, *the Romans receive Horatius with congratulations (congratulating).*

5. *Means.*

**sōl oriēs diem cōficit**, *the sun, by its rising, makes the day.*

6. *Concession.*

**repulsus in oppidum, tamen . . . impetrāvit**, *although he had been driven back into the town, yet he gained, etc.*

It will be seen from these examples that clauses beginning with "if," "when," "after," "although," "since," "while," etc., and relative clauses may often be rendered in Latin by the participle.

[H. 637-639; (549); LM. 1017; A. 496; (292); G. 664-668; B. 337, 2.]

88. When a verb in English is coördinate (connected by "and") with another verb, it may often be rendered in Latin by a participle in agreement with the subject or object of that verb:

**cōpiās ēductās ex castris instrūxērunt**, *they led their troops out of camp and drew them up (literally, they drew up their troops HAVING BEEN LED out of camp).*

89. **Ablative Absolute.** — A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the relations mentioned in 87. The word "absolute" means that this construction can be used only

when the noun has no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence :

**armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus . . . profectus est**, *after arms and hostages had been received, Crassus set out*, etc.

The student will notice that it is possible to use the ablative absolute in the above example because **armis . . . acceptis** has nothing to do grammatically with the main clause, *Crassus set out*.

1. The ablative absolute is often used to supply the lack of a perfect active participle [85, 2]. If we wished to express *Caesar having done this*, we must say **quō factō Caesar** (*this having been done, Caesar*).

2. The participle is sometimes omitted, and two substantives, or a substantive and an adjective, are used in the ablative absolute construction :

**duce Brūtō**, *under the leadership of Brutus*.

[H. 489; (431); LM. 638-642; A. 419, 420; (255); G. 409, 410; B. 227.]

• 90. Translate :

1. When they had performed these deeds, they set out for Rome.

2. Though he was wounded, he fought for many hours

3. I heard her while she was speaking.

4. He took <sup>1</sup> the town and killed the inhabitants.

5. He received the gifts that had been sent.

6. When Cicero had been elected <sup>2</sup> consul, he drove Catiline from Rome.

7. When Cicero had been elected <sup>2</sup> consul, Catiline formed a conspiracy.

8. We become better citizens by doing <sup>3</sup> our duty.

9. If he is killed, we shall all mourn.

<sup>1</sup> Use *potior*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *factō*.

<sup>3</sup> Use *fungor*.



## LESSON II

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. SUPINE

91. The gerund is a verbal noun. It has only the oblique cases of the singular, i.e. *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative*. As a *noun* the gerund may itself be governed by other words ; as a *verb* it may take an object.

Examples of its use in different cases :

*Genitive.*

*ars vivendi, art of living.*

*agendi causā, for the sake of doing.*

*cupidus videndi, desirous of seeing.*

*Dative.*

*aqua utilis est bibendō, water is useful for drinking.*

The dative is not often used.

*Accusative.*

This case is used only with *ad* (sometimes *in*) to denote purpose.

*nūlla rēs tantum ad dicendum prōficīt, etc., nothing is as profitable for speaking, etc.*

*Ablative.*

*dēterrēre ā scribendō, to deter from writing.*

*mēns discendō alitur et cōgitandō, the mind grows by learning and reflection.*

NOTE. — As a rule, the gerund takes a direct object only when used in the genitive or the ablative (without a preposition).

[H. 624-631 ; (541-542) ; L.M. 989, 990 ; A. 501-507 ; (295-301) ; G. 425-433 ; B. 338.]

92. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and is passive in its literal meaning. See 85. Therefore, being an adjective, it always agrees with a substantive:

*cōnsilia urbis dēlendae, plans for destroying the city (literally, plans of the city to be destroyed).*

*ad pācem petendam vērunt, they came to seek peace (literally, they came for peace to be asked).*

93. Gerundive Construction used instead of the Gerund. — When the genitive or ablative of the gerund would have a direct object, the gerundive is generally used instead. See 91, note.

## GERUND CONSTRUCTION

*cupidus pācem petendī, desirous of seeking peace.*

*scribendō epistulās, by writing letters.*

GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION  
(preferable)

*cupidus pācis petendae.*

*scribendis epistulis.*

1. The gerundive is always used to avoid using a direct object with the dative of the gerund, or with a case dependent upon a preposition. 91, note.

*aptum tegendis corporibus, suited to the defense of the body.*  
*ad pācem petendam vērunt, they came to seek peace.*

*Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus, Brutus was slain in freeing his country.*

2. When the genitives *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, are used in the gerundive construction, the gerundive regularly ends in *dī*, regardless of the gender and number of the pronoun:

*nostri servandī causā, for the sake of saving ourselves.*

[H. 625-631; (543, 544); LM. 987-1003; A. 503-507; (296-301); G. 427-433; B. 339.]

**94. Active Periphrastic Conjugation.** — This is formed by the future active participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*. It expresses the idea conveyed by the English phrases “I am about to,” “I am going to,” “I intend to”:

*amātūrus est, he is about to love.*

[H. 236 (233); LM. 355; A. 193-195; (129); G. 247; B. 115.]

**95. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.** — This is formed by the gerundive and the auxiliary verb *sum*. It expresses *obligation* or *necessity*, and in its literal meaning is passive. The agent is expressed by the dative case.

Note the following points:

1. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast into the passive voice before they can be literally translated in Latin. Thus: “I must give the signal” (active) = “The signal must be given by me” (passive) = *signum mihi est dandum*.

2. Intransitive verbs of this conjugation are always used impersonally in Latin. Thus: “We ought to come” = “It ought to be come by us” = *nōbis veniendum*.

[H. 237; (234); LM. 991, 992; A. 193-196; (129); G. 251; B. 115.]

#### **96. Supine.**

1. The form ending in *-um* is used chiefly to express purpose after verbs of motion:

*ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnerunt, they came to Caesar to congratulate him.*

2. The form in *-ū* is used as an ablative of specification with various adjectives:

**hōc est optimum factū, this is best to do** (literally, *this is best in respect to doing*).

**mirābile dictū, wonderful to say.**

[H. 633, 635; (546, 547); LM. 1004-1008; A. 508-510; (302, 303); G. 435, 436; B. 340.]

97. Translate :

1. She was fitted to rule.
2. You must remain here.
3. Ambassadors came to seek peace.<sup>1</sup>
4. Since Crassus is their leader, they ought to fight bravely.
5. They formed<sup>2</sup> the plan of renewing the war.
6. We will flee for the sake of saving ourselves.
7. No time was given the Romans to<sup>3</sup> arm themselves.
8. That is easy to do.
9. Caesar had to recall the soldiers.
10. By giving and aiding we enjoy life.

## LESSON 12

### REVIEW AND SIGHT PRACTICE

98. Review the principles of syntax in 58-96.

99. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words :

- |                           |              |
|---------------------------|--------------|
| 1. hinc.                  | 6. pāreō.    |
| 2. illic.                 | 7. vēndō.*   |
| 3. hūc.                   | 8. domus.    |
| 4. culpō, <i>I blame.</i> | 9. soleō.    |
| 5. inimicus, hostis.      | 10. quisque. |

<sup>1</sup> Express in two ways.

<sup>2</sup> capiō.

<sup>3</sup> ad and acc.

- |                |                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 11. quisquis.  | 31. aperīō.                         |
| 12. quisquam.  | 32. mūniō.                          |
| 13. quidam.    | 33. pigritia, ae, <i>laziness</i> . |
| 14. relinquo.  | 34. pēs.                            |
| 15. porta.     | 35. minimē.                         |
| 16. portus.    | 36. quidem, nē-quidem.              |
| 17. etiam.     | 37. quoque.                         |
| 18. vērō.      | 38. aedificiū.                      |
| 19. ager.      | 39. castra.                         |
| 20. agō.       | 40. periculum.                      |
| 21. cohortor.* | 41. fidēlis.                        |
| 22. audeō.*    | 42. cōficiō.                        |
| 23. audiō.     | 43. instruō.                        |
| 24. obses.     | 44. interficiō.*                    |
| 25. dives.     | 45. cōsiliū.                        |
| 26. aptus.     | 46. iuvō.                           |
| 27. trādō.     | 47. statuō.                         |
| 28. salūs.     | 48. cōstituō.                       |
| 29. adsum.     | 49. cōsistō.                        |
| 30. petō.      |                                     |

100. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs given above, and write out all the participles of those that are starred.

101. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 99, illustrating the grammatical principles of 58-96. These sentences may be given for oral drill or a written exercise.

## LESSON 13

TENSES OF INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, AND INFINITIVE.  
 DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. HOW TO EXPRESS "OUGHT,"  
 "MUST"

**102. Present Indicative.** — Aside from its regular meanings, the following uses should be noted :

1. It is used to describe past actions and events which the writer imagines to be now going on before his eyes. It is then called the *Historical Present*, and is generally translated by a past tense :

*Caesar Aeduis obsidēs imperat, Caesar demanded hostages of the Aeduaus.*

2. When *dum, while*, is used with the present tense, the verb is generally translated as if it were imperfect :

*dum haec geruntur, while these things WERE GOING ON.*

3. In combination with, *iam, now* : *iam diū, now for a long time*; *iam pridem, now long since*, and similar words, the present is used with the force of the English perfect.

*iam diū cupiō tē visere, I have for a long time wished to visit you (i.e. I now wish and have long wished).*

**103. Imperfect Indicative.** — This tense represents the action as *taking place in past time*.

1. It sometimes represents an action as *customary or repeated* :

*epulābātur mōre Persārum, he USED TO BANQUET in the Persian style.*

2. With *iam, iam diū, iam dūdum, etc.* [see 102, 2], the imperfect has the force of the English pluperfect :

*iam diū cupiēbam tē visere, I had for a long time wished to visit you.*

**104. Future Indicative.**—The Latin uses the future much more exactly than the English. We often use the present tense to refer to future time, the Latin very seldom. Thus:

*If he comes, I shall see him, si veniet (literally, will come), eum vidēbō.*

**105. Perfect Indicative.**—Note its two meanings (1) *amāvi, I have loved*, called the present perfect or perfect definite; (2) *amāvi, I loved*, called the historical perfect or perfect indefinite.

**106.** Note these perfects that have a *present* meaning. Their pluperfect forms have the force of the imperfect:

*nōvi, I know.*

*memini, I remember.*

*ōdi, I hate.*

*cōnsuēvi, I am accustomed.*

**107. Future-perfect Indicative.**—Note again (see 104) how exactly the Latin uses its tenses:

*When I reach Rome, I will write, Rōmam cum vēnerō (literally, shall have reached), scribam.*

#### REFERENCES FOR USE OF TENSES OF INDICATIVE

[H. 532-540; (466-473); LM. 730-748; A. 465-479, 556; (276-281); G. 227-244; B. 259-264.]

**108.** The tenses of the infinitive denote present, past, or future time not absolutely, but *with reference to the time of the verb on which they depend*. The significance of the

tenses is the same as that of the tenses of the participle. Review 84, with the examples given, very carefully.

[H. 617; (537); LM. 978; A. 486, 569, a; (288); G. 529, 530; B. 270.]

109. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be formed. Review 85.

## INFINITIVES

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	second one of the principal parts	change final <i>e</i> of present active infinitive to <i>i</i> , except in third conjugation, which changes <i>ere</i> to <i>i</i>
FUTURE	future active participle and <i>esse</i>	supine and <i>iri</i>
PERFECT	perfect active stem + <i>isse</i>	perfect passive participle and <i>esse</i>

1. Deponent verbs substitute the future active for the future passive infinitive.

Form all the infinitives of the following verbs:

*vincō, vincere, vici, victus, conquer.*

*sentio, sentire, sensi, sensus, perceive.*

*proficiscor, proficisci, profectus, set out.*

110. **Deliberative Subjunctive.**—The subjunctive is used in questions that are asked, not to receive information, but to indicate (1) *doubt, indignation*, or (2) an *impossibility*



of the thing's being done. The negative is *nōn*. They are most common in the first person.

*quid agam, iūdicēs?* *what am I to do, judges?*

*quid dicerem?* *what was I to say?* or *what could I say?*

[H. 559, 4; (484, V); LM. 723; A. 444; (268); G. 265; B. 277.]

III. English expressions that employ the auxiliary verbs *ought* or *must*, such as *you ought to go*, *he must do this*, are expressed in Latin in several ways:

1. The passive periphrastic conjugation. Review 95.
2. *dēbeō* and the infinitive.
3. *oportet* (an impersonal verb) with the infinitive, or the subjunctive (without *ut*):

*tē oportet virtūs trahat*, *virtue ought to attract you* (literally, *it ought (to be) that virtue attract you*).

*lēgem brevem esse oportet*, *a law ought to be brief*.

EXAMPLES: —

<i>id mihi faciendum est,</i> <i>dēbeō id facere,</i> <i>mē oportet id facere,</i> <i>oportet id faciam,</i>	}	<i>I ought to do this,</i> or <i>I must do this.</i>
---	---	--

[H. 564, II, 1; (502, 1); LM. 694, 782; A. 565; (331, i); G. 535, R. 2; B. 295, 6, 8.]

III.2. Compare these two English sentences:

“I ought to do this.”

“I ought to have done this.”

In changing to past time, the infinitive changes, and not the main verb “ought.” This is because the verbs “ought” and “must” are defective in English. In the

following Latin examples, note that the *main verb* changes to a past tense, and not the infinitive :

dēbeō id facere,	}	<i>I ought to do this.</i>
oportet mē id facere,		
dēbui id facere,	}	<i>I ought to have done this.</i>
oportuit mē id facere,		

[H. 618, 2; (537, 1); LM. 980; A. 486, a; (288, a); G. 254, R. 1; B. 270, 2.]

113. Translate :

1. We have been living in the city for many years.
2. Shall I tell him this?
3. She ought to work more diligently.
4. While the city was being fortified, the enemy arrived.
5. He had been in command of<sup>1</sup> the army a long time.
6. You ought not to have written that letter.
7. He hates them on account of their laziness.
8. Caesar had to fortify his camp.
9. What was I to do?
10. He never used to obey his parents.

## LESSON 14

COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, PROHIBITIONS; HOW TO EXPRESS "MAY," "CAN," "MIGHT," ETC.

114. The present imperative is used to express a direct positive command in the second person. The future tense is used chiefly in legal phrases :

dā mihi hōc, *give me this.*

[H 560; (487); LM. 725; A. 448, 449; (269); G. 266; B. 281.]

<sup>1</sup> Be in command of = *praesum*.

**115.** The first and third persons, which are missing in the imperative, are supplied by the subjunctive (negative *nē*). The tense is usually present. The subjunctive then expresses an *exhortation* or an *entreaty*:

*amēmus patriam, let us love our country.*

*sēcernant sē ā bonis, let them separate themselves from the good.*

[H. 559, 1, 560; (484, 11); LM. 713; A. 439; (266); G. 263, 1, 3; B. 274, 275.]

**116.** A direct command in the second person, when negative, is called a *prohibition*. They are expressed in Latin as follows:

1. *Nōli* (plural *nōlite*), *be unwilling*, with the infinitive. This is the common expression: *nōli hōc facere, do not do this* (literally, *be unwilling to do this*).

2. *Nē* with the second person of the perfect subjunctive, or *cavē, cavē nē, fac nē, take care not, see that not*, with the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive. These expressions, however, are less common.

CAUTION. — Do not express prohibition by *nē* or *nōn* and the imperative.

[H. 561, 1, 2; (488–489); LM. 728, 729; A. 450; (269, a, b); G. 271, 2, 272, 2; B. 276.]

#### SUMMARY

PERSON	POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
FIRST	<i>hōc faciāmus, let us do this</i>	<i>nē hōc faciāmus, let us not do this</i>
SECOND	<i>hōc fac, do this</i>	<i>nōli (nōlite) hōc facere, do not do this</i>
THIRD	<i>hōc faciat, let him do this</i>	<i>nē hōc faciat, let him not do this</i>

117. The English auxiliaries, *may, might, could, would, should*, are not always used with the same force. When used with their full force of *possibility*, or *power*, they are expressed by corresponding Latin verbs. Thus, *licet, it is permitted*, gives the idea of *may, might*; *possum, I am able*, the idea of *could*; *volō, I am willing*, the idea of *would*. When these English auxiliaries are less forceful, that is, are not used with their full literal meaning, they are represented in Latin by the subjunctive mood.

118. **Potential Subjunctive.** — This expresses an action as *possible* or *conditional*, not as real. It often represents an action as dependent upon some implied condition. The negative is *nōn*. This subjunctive is generally represented in English by *may, should, would*:

*quispiam quaerat, some one may ask.*

*velim, I should wish, or I should like* (more polite than *volō, I wish*).

*dicerēs, you would say, or would have said.*

[H. 552-556; (485, 486); LM. 717-720; A. 445-447, 522; (311, a, b); G. 257, 258; B. 280.]

119. When *may* or *might* emphasize the idea of permission, use *licet*. It is used as follows:

1. Followed by subjunctive.
2. Followed by infinitive.

EXAMPLES:

*licet eum (ei) venire, } he may (i.e. is permitted to) come.*  
*licet veniat, }*

[H. 564, II, 1, 615; (501, 1, 536, 2, (3)); LM. 693, 782; A. 565, N. 2; (331, i, N. 3); G. 535, 553, 4; B. 295, 6, 327, 1.]

**120. Translate :**

1. Let them free us from danger.
2. He ought to have remained here.
3. Don't leave the city.
4. Let us all enjoy life.
5. What can that fellow do?
6. Let us not be afraid of work.
7. I should like to do that.
8. You may<sup>1</sup> do it if you wish.
9. Some one may<sup>1</sup> ask you for that book.
10. Any one would have fought for<sup>2</sup> his country.

**LESSON 15****CONDITIONS AND WISHES**

**121.** Conditional sentences are complex sentences consisting of two parts, the condition (or protasis) introduced by "if," "if not," "unless," and the conclusion (or apodosis).

For convenience, they may be arranged in these classes :

**I.** Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.
2. Contrary to Fact (Non-fact).

**II.** Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

**122. Simple.** — In this class the condition (or protasis) simply states a present or past supposition of fact, without

<sup>1</sup> Does "may" mean "is permitted" ?

<sup>2</sup> Do not use the dative.

implying whether or not it is true. The present and past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion :

**sī hōc faciunt, bene est, *if they do this, it is well.***

**sī hōc fēcērunt, bene fuit, *if they did this, it was well.***

[H. 574; (508) ; LM. 933; A. 515; (306) ; G. 595; B. 302.]

**123. Contrary-to-fact Conditions.** — When the condition states a present or past supposition, implying that the condition is not or was not fulfilled (*i.e.* is contrary to the actual facts of the case), the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both condition and conclusion. The imperfect expresses present time, the pluperfect past time :

**sī hōc facerent, bene esset, *if they were (now) doing this (implying that they are not), it would be well.***

**sī hōc fēcissent, bene fulset, *if they had done this, it would have been well.***

1. Expressions of *ability, obligation, or necessity* (such as *dēbeō, oportet, decet, possum*, the periphrastic conjugation, etc.), when used in the conclusion, are often in the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect *indicative*, instead of the *subjunctive* :

**sī Rōmae privātus esset, tamen is erat dēligendus, *if he were a private citizen at Rome, yet he ought to be appointed.***

[H. 579, 1, 583; (510, 511, 2) ; LM. 938, 940; A. 517; (308, a, c) ; G. 597, 3, (a) ; B. 304, 1, 3.]

**124. Vivid Future Condition.** — When a supposed future case is stated distinctly and vividly (as in English, “if I shall go,” or “if I go”), the future or future-perfect indicative is used in both condition and conclusion :

**sī hōc facient, bene erit, if they do (i.e. will do) this, it will be well.**

CAUTION. — Remember that the present tense in English often refers to future time. See 104.

[H. 574; (508); LM. 933; A. 516, a; (307, a); G. 595; B. 302.]

**125. Less Vivid Future Condition.** — When a supposed future case is stated in a less distinct or vivid form (as in English, "if I should go"), the present (less often the perfect) subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion :

**sī hōc faciant, bene sit, if they should do this, it would be well.**

This form of condition may be recognized in English by the auxiliaries *should* or *would*, in both parts of the condition.

[H. 576; (509); LM. 936; A. 516, b; (307, b); G. 596; B. 303.]

## 126. Summary of conditions :

CLASSES  
OF  
CONDITIONAL  
SENTENCES.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| { | I. Present or past time.  |
|   | 1. Simple. Present or past tenses of indicative in both parts.      |
|   | 2. Contrary to fact.  |
|   | (1) Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts.             |
|   | (2) Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts.               |
|   | II. Future time.  |
|   | 1. Vivid future. Future or future perfect indicative in both parts. |
|   | 2. Less vivid future. Present or perfect subjunctive in both parts. |

**127.** Condition omitted. The condition (or protasis) is sometimes contained in a participle, or implied from the sense of the sentence.

**liberātus Rōmam ibit**, *if he is set free (literally, having been liberated), he will go to Rome.* See potential subjunctive, 118.

**128.** Wishes may be divided into two classes :

1. Those that refer to the future as, "may he do this," or "O that he may come."

2. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are sometimes called *contrary-to-fact* wishes. Thus, "O that this had happened" (implying that it did not happen), or "would that he were not here" (implying that he is here now).

**129.** The subjunctive, usually with **utinam**, is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē**. The force of the tenses is as follows :

1. The present tense, often with **utinam**, refers to future time, and denotes the wish as possible.

2. The imperfect tense, regularly with **utinam**, expresses a wish that is contrary to fact in present time.

3. The pluperfect, regularly with **utinam**, represents a wish as contrary to fact in past time.

#### EXAMPLES :

1. **utinam hōc faciat**, *may he do this !* (possible).

2. **utinam hōc faceret**, *would that he were doing this !* (contrary to fact in present time, implying that he isn't doing this).



3. *utinam hōc nē fēcisset*, *would that he had not done this!* (contrary to fact in past time).

[H. 558, 1, 2; (483); LM. 710-712; A. 441, 442; (267, b); G. 260, 261; B. 279.]

130. Translate:

1. I wish he would not come!
2. If he should leave the city, we would all be glad.
3. Let us not surrender to the enemy.
4. Would you have remained, if I had come?
5. O that the famous<sup>1</sup> Alexander were now alive!
6. Even if he gives the signal, we will not advance.
7. Would that we had not persuaded him!
8. You would not have done so.<sup>2</sup>
9. If she is at home, I am glad.

## LESSON 16

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS. CONSTRUCTION AFTER VERBS OF FEARING AND VERBS OF DOUBTING

131. When the subjunctive is used in a dependent clause, the choice of the tense to be used depends upon the time of the principal or leading clause.

All tenses are divided into two classes: *primary* (*principal*) and *secondary* (*historical*).

1. The primary or principal tenses include all forms that express present or future time. They are the present, future, and future-perfect indicative, the present and perfect subjunctive, and the present and future imperative.

<sup>1</sup> See 61.

<sup>2</sup> Is a condition implied?

2. The secondary or historical tenses are those that express past time. They are the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

(a) The historical present [102, 1] is sometimes considered a primary tense, although more often a secondary.

**132. Rule for Sequence of Tenses.**—Whenever the subjunctive is used in a subordinate or dependent clause, the tense that should be used is determined by the following rule:

**A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; a secondary tense is followed by a secondary tense.**

**133.** In applying this rule for the sequence of tenses, the student should notice (1) whether the verb of the main clause is primary or secondary; (2) whether the dependent verb denotes (a) time that is present or future with reference to the time of the main verb (*i.e.* whether it denotes incomplete action), or (b) time that is past with reference to the main verb (*i.e.* completed action).

1. If the main verb is primary, the dependent subjunctive must be present tense if the action is incomplete, and perfect if it denotes complete action.

2. If the main verb is a secondary tense, the dependent subjunctive must be imperfect if it denotes incomplete action, and pluperfect if it denotes completed action.

Examples of sequence of tenses :

1. **videō quid faciat,**  
*I see what he is doing.*
2. **vidi quid faceret,**  
*I saw what he was doing.*

} In both these examples the dependent clause expresses incomplete action, because the *doing* was going on at the same time as the *seeing*.

3. **videō quid fēcerit,**  
*I see what he did (or has done).*
4. **vidi quid fēcisset,**  
*I saw what he did (or had done).*
- } Here the dependent clauses denote completed action, because the *doing* was finished before the *seeing* began.

### OUTLINE FOR USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES

PRINCIPAL OR MAIN VERB	TENSE USED IN SUBJUNCTIVE	
	INCOMPLETE TIME	COMPLETED TIME
Present Future Future perfect Imperative	Present	Perfect
Perfect Pluperfect Imperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

#### REFERENCES FOR SEQUENCE OF TENSES

[H. 543-545; (490-495); LM. 802-809; A. 482-485; (285, 286); G. 509-511; B. 266, 267.]

**134. Indirect Questions.**—When a question is not asked directly, but depends upon some introductory verb, the subjunctive is used:

**sciō quis ille sit,** *I know who he is.* (The direct question was, **quis ille est?** *who is he?*)

Indirect questions may be recognized in English by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

[H. 649, II; (529, I); LM. 810; A. 573-575; (334); G. 467; B. 300.]

135. A clause dependent upon a verb or expression of *fearing* may be expressed by *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. *Nē* is affirmative, and means *that*; *ut* is negative, and means *that not*:

*timeō nē hōc faciat, I fear that he will do this (or I fear that he is doing this).*

*timēbam ut hōc faceret, I feared that he would not do this.*

1. *nē nōn, that . . . not*, is occasionally used instead of *ut*, and regularly so when the verb of fearing is negative:

*nōn vereor nē hōc nōn fēcerit, I am not afraid that he has not done this.*

[H. 567, 1; (498, III); LM. 897; A. 564; (331, f); G. 550, 2; B. 296, 2.]

136. Verbs of *doubting*, when negative or in the form of a question that implies a negative answer, are followed by *quīn, that, but that*, and the subjunctive:

*nōn erat dubium quīn plūrimum possent, there was no doubt that they had very great power.*

*quis dubitat quīn in virtūte dīvitīae sint? who doubts (implying that no one does) that there are riches in virtue?*

1. *Dubitō* also means *hesitate*, and is regularly followed by the infinitive:

*nōn dubitem dicere, etc., I should not hesitate to say, etc.*

[H. 595, 1; (504, 505, 1, 4); LM. 913, 914; A. 558, 2; (332, g, R. N. 2); G. 555, 2, R. 3; B. 298, b.]

137. Translate:

1. Do not tell me where you went.
2. May he not hesitate to fight bravely!
3. I have not asked who she is.

4. I was afraid that they had not returned home.
5. Would any one doubt that he was a good soldier?
6. Let us not fear that the enemy will come.
7. What has that fellow<sup>1</sup> told you?
8. Caesar ought not to have killed all the inhabitants.

## LESSON 17

### REVIEW AND SIGHT PRACTICE

138. Review the principles of syntax in 102–136.

139. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words:

1. vincō.	18. incola.
2. vinciō.	19. cōnsuēscō.
3. vivō.*	20. trahō.
4. cōgnōscō.	21. brevis.
5. oportet.	22. lēx.
6. dēbeō.*	23. labōrō.
7. finitimus.	24. mūnus.
8. parēns.	25. ōdi.
9. epistula, littera.	26. gerō.*
10. sēcernō.	27. fidēs.
11. quaerō.	28. gaudeō.*
12. iter.	29. cupiō.
13. licet.	30. grātia.
14. vereor.	31. sciō.
15. timeō.	32. dubitō.
16. terreō.	33. nēmō.
17. queror.*	34. scelus.

Write all the infinitives of the starred verbs.

<sup>1</sup> See 60.

140. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 139, illustrating the grammatical principles of 102-136. These sentences may be given for oral drill or a written exercise.

## LESSON 18

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE AND RESULT. OBJECT CLAUSES

141. A purpose clause is one which expresses the end or purpose of the action of a verb.

In English, purpose is indicated in a variety of ways. In the sentence, "He came to see me," the purpose clause "to see me" may be expressed "in order that he might see me," or "for the purpose of seeing me," or "in order to see me," etc.

142. In Latin, also, there are many ways of expressing purpose. In previous lessons these have been considered.

1. The genitive of the gerundive construction followed by *causā*. See 91, second example, and 93.

2. The genitive of the gerund followed by *causā*. See 91, second example.

3. *ad* and the accusative of the gerundive construction. See 93, 1, second example.

4. *ad* and the accusative of the gerund. See 91, accusative. This construction is not used with transitive verbs. See 93, 1.

5. Supine in *-um* after verbs of motion. See 96, 1.

143. A clause of purpose is most commonly expressed by *ut*, *that*, *in order that*, and *nē*, *in order that not*, *lest*, and the subjunctive :

*vēni ut meum amicum vidērem, I came that I might see my friend (or to see my friend).*

*portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī iniūriam acciperent, he closed the gates, lest the townsmen should receive any injury.*

1. A relative pronoun is used with the subjunctive to express purpose. There must, of course, be an antecedent of the relative, expressed or understood, in the main clause :

*qui cōgnōscerent misit, he sent men to find out, etc. (literally he sent those who should find out).*

2. *quō* (the ablative of the relative) is often used with the subjunctive to express purpose when the purpose clause contains a comparative :

*carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada excipere possent, the bottoms of the ships (were) considerably flatter than those of our vessels, so that they might be able to stand the shoals more easily.*

[H. 568; (497); LM. 835, 899, 908; A. 529-532; (317); G. 544, R. 2; B. 282.]

CAUTION. — Do not express purpose in Latin by the infinitive. This is used in English, but not in classical Latin.

QUERY. — In how many ways may purpose be expressed in Latin?

144. The student should notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of a verb. Observe the difference as shown in these two examples :

“They shouted so that he might hear.” (Purpose.)

“They shouted so that he heard.” (Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so, such, in such a way*, etc., is often used in the sentence before the result clause to lead up to it, and to show that such a clause is to follow.

145. A result clause is expressed in Latin by *ut, that, so that*, and *ut nōn, so that not*, and the subjunctive:

*tanta subito malacia exstitit ut sē movēre nōn possent, such a calm suddenly arose that they could not move.*

1. A relative and the subjunctive also often express result:

*nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere, nobody is so old as not to think that he can live a year.*

Note that a negative purpose clause is introduced by *nē*, a negative result clause by *ut nōn*.

[H. 570; (500); LM. 905; A. 537, 538; (319); G. 552; B. 284.]

✓146. After many Latin verbs the object clause is expressed by *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive, whereas in English the corresponding construction employs the infinitive:

(Latin.) *huic persuādet utī ad hostīs trānseat* (the object of *persuādet* is the clause *utī . . . trānseat*).

(English.) *he persuaded him to go over to the enemy* (the object of *persuaded* is the infinitive clause, *to go over to the enemy*).

Because of this difference in idiom it is necessary to know what Latin verbs are followed by an object clause in the subjunctive.

147. The subjunctive introduced by *ut* or *nē* is used as the object of verbs signifying to *ask, command, advise, resolve, urge, persuade, permit, strive, decree*.



**monet ut omnis suspiciōnēs vitet**, *he advises (or warns) him to avoid all suspicion.*

**Helvētiis persuāsit ut exirent**, *he persuaded the Helvetians to march forth.*

**suis imperāvit nē quod omninō tēlum in hostis rēicerent**, *he ordered his men not to throw back at the enemy any weapon at all.*

**tē rogō ut eum iuvēs**, *I beg you to aid him.*

The following verbs are some of the most common that take this construction :

**persuādeō**, *persuade.*

**imperō**, *mandō*, *order.*

**rogō**, *ask.*

**orō**, *beg.*

**postulō**, *demand.*

**moneō**, *advise.*

**petō**, *quaerō*, *request, entreat.*

**cohortor**, **hortor**, *encourage, urge.*

**concēdō**, **permittō**, *allow.*

**cēseō**, *propose, move.*

**dēcernō**, *resolve, decree.*

**operam dō**, *take pains.*

**negōtium dō**, *employ, charge.*

**labōrō**, **contendō**, *strive.*

[H. 565; (498, I, II); LM. 893-895; A. 563, 566; (331); G. 546, and N. 1; B. 295, 1, 2, 4, 5.]

**148.** There are many exceptions to the principle stated in 147, of which note the following :

1. **Iubeō**, *order*, and **vetō**, *forbid*, are regularly followed by the infinitive :

**Helvētiōs oppida restituere iussit**, *he ordered the Helvetians to rebuild their towns.*

2. **Cōnor**, *try, strive*, regularly takes the infinitive :

**sī trānsire cōnārentur**, *if they should try to cross.*

8. The following verbs are followed either by (1) the infinitive, or (2) *ut* and *nē* and the subjunctive. Yet the infinitive is more common.

*patior, sinō, allow.*

*cōstituō, determine.*

*statuō, resolve upon.*

*volō, wish, be willing.*

*nōlō, be unwilling.*

*mālō, prefer.*

*cupiō, desire.*

*studeō, be eager for.*

149. Translate:

1. They sent a man to see her. (Express in six different ways in Latin.)
2. They were persuaded<sup>1</sup> to do this.
3. Caesar asked Labienus to occupy<sup>2</sup> the mountain and wait for his men.
4. I ordered him to be bound<sup>2</sup> and led to me.
5. We should like to go to Athens.
6. He was so lazy that he would not fight.
7. I am not the man to desert a friend.

## LESSON 19

### CONSTRUCTION AFTER VERBS OF HINDERING AND REFUSING. TEMPORAL CLAUSES

150. Object clauses dependent upon verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, and *refusing* are expressed as follows:

(1) By *nē* or *quōminus* and the subjunctive, if the main clause is *affirmative*.

**Caesar dēterrēre potest nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Caesar can prevent a greater multitude of Germans from being led across the Rhine.**

<sup>1</sup> *were persuaded*: see 32, 2.

<sup>2</sup> Use a participle to express this verb.

1. **Prohibeo** regularly takes the infinitive.

**Germanōs transire prohibēbant**, *they kept the Germans from crossing.*

(2) By **quīn** (less often **quōminus**) and the subjunctive, if the main clause is negative.

**neque recūsant quīn armīs contendant**, *and they do not refuse to contend in arms.*

**retinēri nōn potuerant quīn tēla conicerent**, *they could not be restrained from hurling their weapons.*

[H. 566, 568, 8, 595, 2; (504, 4, 505, 11); LM. 898; A. 558; (331, 2, 332, 8); G. 548, 549, 554, 555; B. 295, 3, a.]

151. The time of the action of a verb may be defined by (1) a noun, or (2) a clause. As, "At six o'clock he went home." "When it was dark he went home."

Review 51.

152. Temporal clauses introduced by the following particles take the indicative. The tense is generally perfect or historical present.

<b>postquam</b> ( <b>posteaquam</b> ), <i>after</i> .	} <i>as soon as.</i>
<b>ubi</b> , <i>when</i> .	
<b>ut</b> , <i>as, when</i> .	
<b>ut primum,</b>	
<b>cum primum,</b>	
	<b>simul atque,</b>
	<b>simul ac,</b>
	<b>simul,</b>

**postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit**, *after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

**Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit**, *when Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the army.*

[H. 602; (518); LM. 881; A. 543; (324); G. 561; B. 287, 1.]

**153.** Temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, *when*, *while*, *after*, take :

1. The indicative, if the tense is present, perfect, future, or future-perfect.

2. The subjunctive, if the tense is imperfect or pluperfect.

The imperfect or pluperfect indicative is very rare in classical Latin.

*cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat, when this had been reported, he hastened.*

*cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, when Caesar came into Gaul.*

Review 87, 1, 89.

[H. 600, 601; (521); LM. 854-858; A. 545-548; (325); G. 580, 585; B. 288, 1.]

**154.** *antequam* and *priusquam*, *before*, *until*, are used as follows :

(1) With the indicative to express an *actual fact*. The tense is generally perfect, future-perfect, or present.

(2) With the subjunctive when the action is viewed as *anticipated*. The imperfect and pluperfect are generally used.

*nec prius respēxi quam vēnimus, and I did not look back until we arrived.*

*priusquam tēlum adici posset, omnis aciēs terga vertit, before a spear could be hurled, the whole army fled.*

1. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are often divided into their two elements, *ante . . . quam*, *prius . . . quam*, and the first part put in the main clause, the second in the temporal clause. See first example given above.

2. *Antequam* and *priusquam* mean *until* after a negative clause. See first example.

[H. 605, I, II; (520); LM. 877-880; A. 550, 551; (327); G. 574-577; B. 291, 292.]

**155. Dum, quoad, or quā diū, as long as, so long as,** take the indicative. For **dum, while,** see 102, 2.

**quoad potuit, restitit, he resisted as long as he could.**

[H. 603, I; (519, I); LM. 918; A. 554, 555; (328, 2); G. 569; B. 293, I, II.]

**156. Dum and quoad, until,** are used as follows:

1. With the indicative to denote *an actual event*. This will be, in general, when the reference is to a past action. In this sense **dum** is used less often than **quoad**.

**nostrī nōn finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad equitēs praecipitis hostis ēgērunt, our men did not give up the pursuit until the cavalry drove the enemy headlong.**

2. With the subjunctive to denote *anticipation or expectancy*. This will be, in general, when the "until" clause refers to future time with reference to the main verb:

**expectās dum dicat, you are waiting until he speaks.**

**dum nāvēs convenirent, in ancoris expectāvit, he waited at anchor for the ships to assemble (literally, until the ships should assemble).**

[H. 603, II, 1, 2; (519, II); LM. 921, 922; A. 553; (328); G. 571, 572; B. 293, III, 1, 2.]

**157. Translate:**

1. I enjoyed my books as long as I remained there.
2. Just<sup>1</sup> as soon as they saw the enemy, they fled.
3. When he had been informed of this, they started for Rome.
4. You ought to have gone before they came.
5. While he was delaying near<sup>2</sup> the city, he met many of his friends.

<sup>1</sup> This word merely emphasizes "as soon as."

<sup>2</sup> ad and acc.

6. Caesar waited for the soldiers to gather.
7. We will prevent them from going away.
8. He did not leave the city until he had seen her.
9. They did not refuse to believe me.

## LESSON 20

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE SENTENCES

158. The words or thoughts of any person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (i.e. direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (i.e. indirect discourse) is one in which the original words or thoughts are stated in the words of another, and conform to the construction of the sentence in which they stand.

The English sentence, *I am present*, when quoted directly, is stated: *he said, "I am present."* When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: *he said that he was present*, or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, *he says that he is present*. An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, *he says (that) he is coming*.

CAUTION. — The English word "that" should be carefully examined. It may (1) introduce an object clause, a purpose or result clause, being rendered in Latin by *ut*, *nē*, *quā*, *quōminus*; (2) be the relative pronoun, as "the book that I saw," and be expressed by the proper form of *quī*; (3) be the demonstrative pronoun, as "that book is mine," and be expressed by *ille*; (4) be used to introduce a clause in indirect discourse, as "I know that he is here." In this case there is no corresponding word in Latin.

## 159. Examine carefully these examples :

## DIRECT DISCOURSE

*I am coming, veniō.**I came, vēni.*

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

*he says that he is coming,*  
*dicīt sē venire.**he said that he had come,*  
*dixit sē vēnisse.*

Note (1) that the English expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that"; (2) that the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the infinitive, with its subject in the accusative; (3) that there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English. Hence never write *dicō ut*, etc., *I say that*, etc.

160. Rule for Main Verbs in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, the main verb of a declaratory sentence becomes infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

Verbs and expressions of *knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving* are used to introduce a sentence when it is quoted indirectly.

Some of the more common verbs are :

*dicō, say, tell.**nūntiō, announce.**referō, report.**certiōrem faciō, inform.**polliceor, promise.**negō, say that . . . not.**narrō, relate.**respondeō, reply.**scribō, write.**memini, remember.**sciō, know.**cōgnōscō, learn, find out.**sentiō, perceive.**audiō, hear.**videō, see.**comperiō, find out.**putō, think.**iūdicō, judge.**spērō, hope.**cōfidō, trust.*

[H. 642; (523, 1); LM. 1020-1023; A. 579, 580; (336, 1, 2); G. 527; B. 314, 1, 331, 1.]

161. Review carefully 108 and 109. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. They only denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action, as *going on at the time* of the main verb; the perfect as *prior* or *completed*; the future as *subsequent*.

The student will be aided in deciding what tense of the infinitive to use in a given indirect statement, if he will imagine what tense was used in the direct statement. A present indicative in the direct statement becomes present infinitive in the indirect; an imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect indicative become perfect infinitive; a future tense becomes future infinitive, or *fore* (*futūrum esse*) *ut* and the subjunctive.

Study carefully these examples :

TENSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
PRESENT	veniō, <i>I am coming.</i>	(Present) videt mē venire, <i>he sees that I am coming.</i>
		(Past) vidit mē venire, <i>he saw that I was coming.</i>
IMPERFECT	veniēbam, <i>I was coming.</i>	(Present) videt mē vēnisse, <i>he sees that I came, or have come.</i>
PERFECT	vēni, <i>I have come, or I came.</i>	(Past) vidit mē vēnisse, <i>he saw that I came, or had come.</i>
PLUPERF.	vēneram, <i>I had come.</i>	



TENSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
FUTURE	<b>veniam, I shall come.</b>	(Present) <b>videt mē ventūrum (esse),</b> or <b>videt rore ut veniam,</b> <i>he sees that I will come.</i>
		(Past) <b>vidit mē ventūrum (esse),</b> or <b>vidit fore ut venirem,</b> <i>he saw that I would come.</i>

1. If a verb has no perfect passive participle, its future infinitive must be represented by **fore ut** and subjunctive.

2. The subject of the infinitive should never be omitted in Latin.

**162.** When the main verb in the direct discourse is used in any one of the following constructions, it becomes *subjunctive* in indirect discourse, and not infinitive.

(1) A direct question, asked for an answer :

(Direct.) **cūr in meās possessiōnēs venis ?** *why do you come into my domain ?*

(Indirect.) **Ariovistus Caesari respondit, cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniret ?** *Ariovistus replied to Caesar, why did he come into his domain ?*

(2) Any imperative form :

(Direct.) **nōli Aeduīs bellum inferre,** *do not make war upon the Aeduans.*

(Indirect.) **postulāvit nē Aeduīs bellum inferret,** *he demanded that he should not make war upon the Aeduans.*

(Direct.) *cum legiōne veni, come with a legion.*

(Indirect.) *scribit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat, he writes to Labienus to come (literally, that he should come) with a legion.*

(3) A subjunctive of *exhortation* (115), or *wish* (128, 129), or *deliberation* (110), remains subjunctive in indirect discourse.

[H. 642, 3, 4; (523, II, 1, III); LM. 1023; A. 586-588; (338-339); G. 651, 652; B. 315, 1, 3, 316.]

163. If the direct discourse is in the form of a *rhetorical* question (*i.e.* one that is asked for effect, and implies its own answer), the main verb becomes *infinitive* in indirect discourse:

(Direct.) *num recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēponere possum? can I lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?*

(Indirect.) *Caesar respondit, num recentium iniuriarum memoriam sē dēponere posse? Caesar replied, could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?*

1. It is often hard to distinguish between a *real* and *rhetorical* question. It often depends merely on the writer's point of view.

[H. 642, 2; (523, II, 2); LM. 1024; A. 586; (338); G. 651, R. 1; B. 315, 2.]

164. Translate:

1. I could not leave the city.
2. Quote sentence 1 indirectly after *dixit*.
3. We told him not to wage war on them.
4. Give the direct discourse of sentence 3.
5. He thought that he was going home.

6. Caesar replied asking what did he intend<sup>1</sup> to do?
7. I saw who was coming.
8. Caesar was informed that the enemy would not flee.
9. He trusted that I would not be able to come.

## LESSON 21

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES

**165.** A complex sentence is one consisting of a principal clause and one or more dependent clauses; as "if he *comes*, I shall go"; "we waited until we *saw* her"; "the man whom I *saw* is a German." The dependent verbs are italicized.

**166.** When a complex sentence is indirectly quoted, its principal or main verb follows the rules stated in 160, 162, 163. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes *subjunctive*. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses (131).

[H. 643; (524); LM. 1026; A. 580, 585; (336, 2, 336, B); G. 650, 654; B. 314, 1, 318.]

**167. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse.** — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns (65, 1, 2, 66) refer either to the subject of the introductory verb, or to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

<sup>1</sup> *Intend* = *volō*, or *in animō habeo*.

168. The following examples illustrate the changes of a dependent clause :

DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
	(Present)
vir quem vidi meus amicus est, <i>the man whom I saw is my friend.</i>	dicit virum quem viderit suum amicum esse, <i>he says that the man whom he saw is his friend.</i>
	(Past)
	dixit virum quem vidisset suum amicum esse, <i>he said that the man whom he saw (or had seen) was his friend.</i>

169. When conditional sentences are quoted indirectly, the following facts should be noted :

(1) The condition (or protasis), being a dependent clause, is always subjunctive.

(2) The conclusion (or apodosis), being a main clause, becomes the infinitive, unless it is in the form that would change to the subjunctive (162).

(3) The conclusion of a less vivid future condition becomes the *future* infinitive. Hence it is impossible to distinguish vivid and less vivid future conditions when quoted indirectly.

(4) The condition of a contrary-to-fact condition never changes its tense.

(5) The conclusion of a contrary-to-fact condition becomes,

1. if active, the infinitive form obtained by combining the participle in *-ūrus* with *fuisse*.
2. if passive, or without a supine stem, the periphrase *futūrum fuisse* ut and the imperfect subjunctive.

## EXAMPLES OF CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

KIND OF CONDITION	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
SIMPLE	<i>sī hōc faciunt, bene est, if they do this, it is well.</i>	(Present) <i>dicīt, sī hōc faciunt, bene esse, he says that, if they do this, it is well.</i> (Past) <i>dixit, sī hōc facerent, bene esse, he said that, if they did this, it was well.</i>
VIVID FUTURE	<i>sī hōc facient, bene erit, if they do this, it will be well.</i>	(Present) <i>dicīt, sī hōc faciunt, bene futūrum, he says that, if they do this, it will be well.</i> (Past) <i>dixit, sī hōc facerent, bene futūrum, he said that, if they did this, it would be well.</i>
LESS VIVID FUTURE	<i>sī hōc faciunt, bene sit, if they should do this, it would be well.</i>	Latin same as that of vivid future condition.

## EXAMPLES OF CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

KIND OF CONDITION	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
CONTRARY TO FACT	(Present time) <b>si hōc facerent, bene esset, if they were (now) doing this, it would be well.</b>	<b>dicat (or dixit), si hōc face- rent, bene futūrum fuisse (rarely esse), he said (or says) that, if they were doing this, it would be well. (The tense of the verb of saying does not affect the condition.)</b>
	(Past time) <b>si hōc fēcissent, bene fuisset, if they had done this, it would have been well.</b>	<b>dicat (or dixit), si hōc fēcis- sent, futūrum fuisse ut bene esset, he says (or said) that, if they had done this, it would have been well.</b>

[H. 646, 647; (527); LM. 1034-1040; A. 589; (337); G. 656-659;  
B. 319-321.]

## 170. Translate:

1. He said he would do it, if I would help him.
2. Wait until the enemy arrive.
3. Quote sentence 2 indirectly after **dixit**.
4. I think that I know what you did.
5. If Caesar had been present, we would not have been defeated.
6. Quote sentence 5 indirectly after **scdō**.
7. He hoped that we would refrain from injuring her.

8. He replied that, if we needed help, we ought to have come to him.

9. They informed Caesar that they had been sent to learn about this very thing.

## LESSON 22

### CONCESSION. PROVISIO. CAUSE. CHARACTERISTIC. REVIEW OF RELATIVE CLAUSES

171. Clauses of concession, introduced in English by *although*, are generally expressed in Latin by

1. *Quamquam*, *although*, and the indicative ;
2. *Quamvis*, *cum*, *although*, and the subjunctive ;
3. *Etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *tametsi*, *even if*, with the same construction as *si*. The indicative is more common.

#### EXAMPLES :—

*quamquam* festinās, nōn est mora longa, *although you are in haste, the delay is not long.*

*quamvis* sis molestus, numquam tē esse cōfitebor malum, *although you may be troublesome, I shall never confess that you are an evil.*

*cum* primi ordinēs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliq̄i resistēbant, *although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted vigorously.*

[H. 585, 586, I, II; (515); LM. 872, 875; A. 527, 549; (313); G. 603-606; B. 309.]

172. *Dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, *if only, provided that*, introducing a proviso, take the subjunctive :

*oderint, dum metuant*, *let them hate, provided (if only) they fear.*

[H. 587; (513, I); LM. 920; A. 528; (314); G. 573; B. 310.]

### DIFFERENT USES OF DUM

Review 102, 2, 156.

dum	= while,	present indicative.
	= until,	{ (1) Indicative to denote <i>actual event</i> . (2) Subjunctive to express <i>anticipation</i> or <i>expectancy</i> .
	= { provided, if only,	subjunctive.

173. A clause that denotes *cause* may be expressed as follows:

1. By *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and the *indicative*, when the reason is *that of the writer or speaker*; with the *subjunctive*, when the reason is regarded as *that of another*.

*Aedui Caesarī grātiās ēgērunt, quod sē periculō liberāvisset,*  
*the Aedui thanked Caesar because he had delivered them*  
*from danger.* (The subjunctive, *liberāvisset*, shows that  
the reason is that of the Aedui, not the writer's reason.)

*quoniam supplicātiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs,*  
*since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.*  
(The reason is that of the writer.)

2. By *cum* and the subjunctive:

*quae cum ita sint, perge, siñce these things are so, proceed.*

3. Sometimes by the participle. See 87, 3.

4. By a relative and the subjunctive.

*ō fortunāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecō-*  
*nem invēneris, O fortunate youth, since you have found*  
*a Homer as the herald of your valor.*

[H. 588, 598; (516, 517); LM. 851, 863; A. 540, 549; (321, 326);  
G. 538-541; B. 286.]



**174. Relative of Characteristic.**—The simplest use of a relative clause is to state a *fact* about the antecedent, as : *puer, quem vidi, adest, the boy, whom I saw, is here.* The indicative mood is then used. When, however, the relative clause expresses an *essential quality or characteristic of an indefinite antecedent*, the subjunctive is used, as *nēmō est qui dicat, there is nobody who says, etc.*

The relative clause of characteristic is necessary to complete the meaning of the sentence; therefore, to leave it out would destroy the sentence. A relative with the indicative, however, merely expresses an additional fact about the antecedent; therefore, it may be omitted and a complete statement still remains. Compare the two examples just given. In the first, leave out “whom I saw,” and a complete statement “the boy is here” remains. In the second, omit “who says,” and the rest of the sentence “there is nobody” seems incomplete, as we naturally expect a clause to fill out the meaning. This test, then, will often help the student to determine whether a given relative clause expresses an essential characteristic:

*quae civitas est quae nōn ēverti possit? what state is there which cannot be overthrown?*

The relative of characteristic is especially common after such expressions as :

*sunt quī, there are some who.*  
*multi sunt quī, there are many who.*  
*nēmō est quī, } there is no one who.*  
*nūllus est quī, }*  
*quis est quī, who is there who?*  
*sōlus est quī, he is the only one who.*

And others.

**1. Dignus, worthy; indignus, unworthy; aptus, fit; idōneus, suitable,** are often followed by a relative and the subjunctive.

*idōneus quī impetret, fit to obtain.*

[H. 591, 1, 5, 6, 7; (503); LM. 836-838; A. 535, a, b, f; (320, a, b, f); G. 631, 1, 2; B. 283, 1, 2; 282, 3.]

**175. Relative clauses** are more frequent in Latin than in English. Their various uses are mentioned below :

1. With the indicative to state a *descriptive fact* about the antecedent. See 174.

2. With the subjunctive to express the *essential characteristic*. See 174.

3. With the subjunctive to denote purpose. See 143, 1.

4. With the subjunctive to denote result. See 145, 1.

5. With the subjunctive to express *cause* and *concession*. See 173, 4.

6. A relative pronoun may be used instead of *si, if*, to form the protasis of any one of the four classes of conditional sentences. See 126.

(Simple.) *quicumque hoc facit, errat, whoever does this makes a mistake.* (*quicumque* = *si quis, if any one.*)

(Contrary to fact.) *quicumque hoc fecisset, errasset, whoever had done this would have made a mistake.*

Such sentences are called conditional relative sentences.

176. Translate :

1. I sent a messenger to inform him.

2. Since you think it is best, I will go.

3. He was put to death, because (they said) he had betrayed his country.

4. Cicero was worthy<sup>1</sup> of being elected consul.

5. He went into the front ranks although he had no shield.

6. There are many soldiers who like to linger around the camp.

7. He came to help me in spite of the fact that<sup>2</sup> he was my enemy.

8. The Gauls with whom Caesar fought were very brave.

9. I will do it, provided you help me.

<sup>1</sup> See 174, 1.

<sup>2</sup> *in spite of the fact that.* What conjunction expresses this idea?

## LESSON 23

## REVIEW AND SIGHT PRACTICE

177. Review the grammatical principles of 141–175.

178. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words:

1. claudō.	20. mandō.
2. facilis.	21. iubeō.
3. transeō.	22. porta.
4. rogō.	23. portus.
5. tēlum.	24. vitō.
6. cohortor.	25. subitō, repente.
7. patior.	26. moneō.
8. sinō.	27. iaciō.
9. crēdō.	28. cōnor.
10. piger.	29. cōstituō.
11. dēserō.	30. prohibeō.
12. poscō.	31. recūsō.
13. resistō.	32. frūmentum.
14. praeceps.	33. moror.
15. expectō.	34. morior.
16. polliceor.	35. spērō.
17. finis.	36. fidō, cōfidō.
18. impetrō.	37. idōneus.
19. iuvō.	38. prōdō.

179. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 178, illustrating the grammatical principles of 141–175. These sentences may be given for oral drill or a written exercise.

## PART II

### CAESAR, GALLIC WAR

#### BOOK I

NOTE. The student should not depend on the English-Latin vocabulary for the Latin words. The Latin text upon which each exercise is based should always be consulted for the proper words or phrases.

##### 180

##### CHAPTER I

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>a.</i> hī linguā inter sē differunt. | <i>a.</i> these differ from one another<br>in language. |
| <i>b.</i> proximī Germānis.             | <i>b.</i> nearest the Germans.                          |
| <i>c.</i> minimē . . . saepe.           | <i>c.</i> very seldom.                                  |
| <i>d.</i> initium capit ā.              | <i>d.</i> begins at.                                    |

1. There are three parts in Gaul as a whole.
2. All of us differed from one another in many ways.<sup>1</sup>
3. The Belgae are nearest the Rhine.
4. The Gauls very seldom surpass the Germans in bravery.
5. It has been said that Gaul begins at the river Rhine.

##### 181

##### CHAPTER II

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>a.</i> civitātī persuāsit ut exīrent. | <i>a.</i> he persuaded the state to<br>go forth. |
| <i>b.</i> his rēbus fiēbat.              | <i>b.</i> the result of this was.                |
| <i>c.</i> unā ex parte.                  | <i>c.</i> on one side.                           |

<sup>1</sup> ways = things.

1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians to get possession of Gaul.
2. The Rhine bounds the Helvetians on one side.
3. It was very easy to form<sup>1</sup> a conspiracy.
4. The result of this was that Caesar waged war on the Helvetians.

## 182

## CHAPTER III

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><i>a.</i> quam m̄xim̄s.</p> <p><i>b.</i> ad eās rēs cōficiendās.</p><br><p><i>c.</i> nōn esse dubium quā plūrimū Helvētī pos-<br/>sent.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> as great as possible.</p> <p><i>b.</i> to accomplish these things,<br/><i>or,</i> for the purpose<br/>of carrying out these<br/>plans.</p> <p><i>c.</i> that there was no doubt that<br/>the Helvetians were the<br/>most powerful.</p> |
|--|--|

1. They got together as many carts as possible.
2. Orgetorix was chosen to undertake this embassy.
3. He persuaded them to exchange<sup>2</sup> an oath-bound pledge.
4. There is no doubt that the Helvetians are very powerful.

## 183

## CHAPTER IV

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><i>a.</i> poenam sequī oportēbat.</p> <p><i>b.</i> nē causam diceret sē ēripuit.</p><br><p><i>c.</i> neque abest suspīciō quā ipse sibi mortem cōn-<br/>sciverit.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> punishment must (had to)<br/>follow.</p> <p><i>b.</i> he saved himself from<br/>pleading his case.</p> <p><i>c.</i> and there is a suspicion<br/>that he committed<br/>suicide.</p> |
|--|--|

<sup>1</sup> form = make.<sup>2</sup> Do not use the infinitive.

1. Orgetorix ought not to be burned.
2. He gathered together all the friends that he had.
3. He will save himself from pleading his case.
4. The Helvetians think that he committed suicide.

## 184

## CHAPTER V

<i>a.</i> ē finibus suis exeunt.	<i>a.</i> they emigrate.
<i>b.</i> paratiorēs ad omnia pericula subeunda.	<i>b.</i> more ready to undergo all dangers.

1. The Helvetii nevertheless attempted to emigrate.
2. Each man was more ready to take grain.
3. They persuaded their neighbors to adopt the same plan.

## 185

## CHAPTER VI

<i>a.</i> bonō animō in populum Rōmānum.	<i>a.</i> friendly (or well) disposed toward the Roman people.
<i>b.</i> L. Pisōne, A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.	<i>b.</i> in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius.

1. The road is so<sup>1</sup> narrow that carts can hardly be hauled one by one.
2. The Helvetii thought that the Allobroges were not well disposed toward Caesar.
3. In our consulship they were compelled to go through their territories.
4. When the bridge had been built,<sup>2</sup> they got everything ready.

<sup>1</sup> tam.<sup>2</sup> faciō.

## 186

## CHAPTER VII

<i>a.</i> Helvētīi certiorēs facti sunt.	<i>a.</i> the Helvetii were informed (or learned).
<i>b.</i> lēgātōs mittunt quī dicerent.	<i>b.</i> they sent ambassadors to say.
<i>c.</i> dum militēs convenirent.	<i>c.</i> until the soldiers should assemble.

1. Caesar set out from Geneva.
2. He will send an ambassador to inform them.
3. Men of unfriendly spirit will not refrain from wrongdoing.
4. He will deliberate until they return.
5. Caesar is informed of this.

## 187

## CHAPTER VIII

<i>a.</i> milia passuum decem.	<i>a.</i> ten miles.
<i>b.</i> negat sē posse.	<i>b.</i> he says he cannot.
<i>c.</i> hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.	<i>c.</i> they gave up this attempt.

1. A wall was extended for sixteen miles.
2. Caesar says they cannot cross without his <sup>1</sup> consent.
3. After the redoubts had been fortified,<sup>2</sup> the ambassadors came back.
4. The soldiers will not give up the fortification of the camp.

## 188

## CHAPTER IX

<i>a.</i> Sēquanīs invītīs, ire nōn poterant.	<i>a.</i> if the Sequani were unwilling, they could not go.
<i>b.</i> Orgetorigis filiam in mātīmōnium dūxerat.	<i>b.</i> he had married the daughter of Orgetorix.

<sup>1</sup> To whom does this refer?<sup>2</sup> Use the participle.

1. The Helvetii cannot emigrate, if Caesar is unwilling.
2. By the intercession of Dumnorix they could persuade them.
3. He wished to marry her.
4. They exchanged as many hostages as possible.

## 189

## CHAPTER X

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <i>Helvētiis esse in animō.</i></li> <li>b. <i>māgnō cum periculō prō-</i><br/><i>vinciae futūrum.</i></li> <li>c. <i>mūnitiōnī Labiēnum prae-</i><br/><i>ficit.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. that the Helvetii intend.</li> <li>b. that it would be very<br/>dangerous for the province.</li> <li>c. he puts Labienus in com-<br/>mand of the fortification.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

1. The Helvetii intended to do this.
2. The Helvetii perceived that it would be very dangerous for them to march <sup>1</sup> through the province.
3. He put a lieutenant in command of the legion.
4. In three days he arrived among the Allobroges.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I-X

190. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the declensions of nouns and adjectives, and the principal parts of verbs :

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>finis.</i></li> <li>2. <i>finitimus.</i></li> <li>3. <i>flūmen.</i></li> <li>4. <i>cōpia</i>, sing. and pl.</li> <li>5. <i>tempus.</i></li> <li>6. <i>iter.</i></li> <li>7. <i>animus</i>, sing. and pl.</li> <li>8. <i>miles.</i></li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9. <i>legiō.</i></li> <li>10. <i>exercitus.</i></li> <li>11. <i>pars</i>, several meanings.</li> <li>12. <i>rēs frūmentāria.</i></li> <li>13. <i>civitas.</i></li> <li>14. <i>proelium.</i></li> <li>15. <i>singuli.</i></li> <li>16. <i>omnis</i>, sing. and pl.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

<sup>1</sup> Do not use infinitive; see text.



- |                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 17. quisque.         | 34. cōstituō.           |
| 18. reliquus.        | 35. instituō.           |
| 19. alius.           | 36. proficiascor.       |
| 20. alter.           | 37. cōgō.               |
| 21. ūnus.            | 38. sequor.             |
| 22. māgnus, compare. | 39. iubeō.              |
| 23. multus, compare. | 40. imperō.             |
| 24. nūllus.          | 41. impetrō.            |
| 25. nōnnūllus.       | 42. cōficiō.            |
| 26. ūllus.           | 43. ūtor.               |
| 27. superior.        | 44. conveniō.           |
| 28. contendō.        | 45. existimō.           |
| 29. trāseō.          | 46. praesum.            |
| 30. gerō.            | 47. antecēdō } with the |
| 31. prohibeō.        | 48. praecēdō } acc.     |
| 32. persuādeō.       | 49. praestō.            |
| 33. cōsistō.         | 50. praefficiō.         |

191. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. Limit of motion, 17.
2. Extent of space and duration of time, 16.
3. Dative with compound verbs, 33.
4. Ablative with *utor*, etc., 44.
5. Indirect statements — main clause, 160.
6. Construction with *persuādeō*, 32, 147.
7. Construction after verbs of commanding, 147, 148.

192. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 190 and the constructions of 191. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## 193

## CHAPTER XI

<i>a.</i> oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.	<i>a.</i> their towns ought not to have been captured.
<i>b.</i> sibi nihil esse reliquī.	<i>b.</i> that they had nothing left.
<i>c.</i> Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit.	<i>c.</i> Caesar decided that he ought not to wait.

1. Their fields ought <sup>1</sup>\* not to be devastated.
2. We have nothing left except our fields.
3. The Aedui ought <sup>1</sup> to have been able to defend themselves and their possessions.
4. We must not wait.

## 194

## CHAPTER XII

<i>a.</i> ea princeps poenās per- solvit.	<i>a.</i> that was the first to pay the penalty.
<i>b.</i> Pisonem eodem proeliō quō Cassium interfē- cerant.	<i>b.</i> they had killed Piso in the same battle with Cassius.

1. I could not judge by <sup>2</sup> looking at it in which direction the Saône flowed.
2. They were not informed that the legions had started from camp.
3. Caesar was the first to inflict a disaster on the Helvetii.
4. Cassius was killed in the same battle with Piso.
5. Caesar crossed the river so quickly <sup>3</sup> that the enemy fled.

\* These numbers in the foot-notes refer to sections of this book.

<sup>1</sup> See 111, 112.

<sup>3</sup> celeriter.

<sup>2</sup> "by looking at it," use a single word.

## 195

## CHAPTER XIII

<i>a.</i> pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat.	<i>a.</i> he has a bridge built over the Saône.
<i>b.</i> nē committeret ut is locus nōmen caperet.	<i>b.</i> let him not cause ( <i>or</i> allow) this place to receive its name.

1. Caesar had his army led across in one day.
2. Divico said, "Remember<sup>1</sup> our valor."
3. "If you remember the destruction of your army, you will not persist in war."
4. He said that, if Caesar would remember<sup>2</sup> that old disaster, he would not persist in war.

## 196

## CHAPTER XIV

<i>a.</i> Caesar respondit sibi mi- nus dubitātiōnis dari.	<i>a.</i> Caesar replied that he had less hesitation.
<i>b.</i> commissum (esse) ā sē quā rē timēret.	<i>b.</i> that he had done anything to make him afraid (to be afraid of).
<i>c.</i> secundiōrēs rēs.	<i>c.</i> prosperity.

1. I have done nothing to be afraid of.
2. Caesar says that he will remember the injuries which they have inflicted.
3. Although the gods grant you prosperity, still they will punish you for your crimes.
4. Caesar replied, "I have less hesitation."
5. Caesar thought that they would not apologize to him for the wrongs which had been done.

<sup>1</sup> See 25.<sup>2</sup> Review carefully 169.

## 197

## CHAPTER XV

- a.* aliēnō locō.  
*b.* pauci dē nostrīs.  
*c.* satis habēbat.

- a.* on unfavorable ground.  
*b.* a few of our men.  
*c.* he deemed it sufficient, was satisfied.

1. He sent ahead a few of<sup>1</sup> the cavalry to see in what direction they had marched.

2. The enemy followed so eagerly that they joined battle on unfavorable ground.

3. Caesar is satisfied to harass the enemy's rear.

## 198

## CHAPTER XVI

- a.* nē pābuli quidem.  
*b.* diem ex diē.  
*c.* māgnā ex parte.

- a.* not even of fodder (the emphatic word is always placed between).  
*b.* from day to day.  
*c.* in great measure, chiefly, very largely.

1. Not even grain could be brought up the river in boats.

2. Caesar was put off by the Aedui from day to day.

3. The day is at hand when<sup>2</sup> grain ought to be bought.

4. Although<sup>3</sup> the war had been undertaken chiefly because of the entreaties of Liscus, yet Caesar was deserted.

## 199

## CHAPTER XVII

- a.* plūrimum valēre.  
*b.* hōs multitudinem dēterrēre  
 nē frumentum cōferant.

- a.* to have very great influence.  
*b.* that these prevent the multitude from bringing grain.

<sup>1</sup> See 23, 1.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use cum, see text.

<sup>3</sup> "although . . . undertaken," see tam . . . hostibus in text.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>dēbeō</i> .                            | 26. <i>concēdō</i> . Cf. no. 9.    |
| 2. <i>exspectō</i> .                         | 27. <i>aliēnus</i> .               |
| 3. <i>statuō</i> .                           | 28. <i>pauci</i> .                 |
| 4. <i>adgredior</i> .                        | 29. <i>agmen novissimum</i> .      |
| 5. <i>interficiō</i> .                       | 30. <i>mille</i> .                 |
| 6. <i>committō</i> , several meanings.       | 31. <i>cotidiē</i> .               |
| 7. <i>coepi</i> .                            | 32. <i>pūblicē</i> .               |
| 8. <i>cōnsuēscō</i> .                        | 33. <i>frigus</i> .                |
| 9. <i>discēdō</i> .                          | 34. ( <i>prex</i> .)               |
| 10. <i>polliceor</i> .                       | 35. <i>concilium</i> .             |
| 11. <i>cadō</i> .                            | 36. <i>cōnsilium</i> .             |
| 12. <i>praetermittō</i> .                    | 37. <i>nēmō</i> , <i>nūllius</i> . |
| 13. <i>sē cōferre</i> .                      | 38. <i>pretium</i> .               |
| 14. <i>relinquō</i> .                        | 39. <i>equester</i> .              |
| 15. <i>queror</i> .                          | 40. <i>supplicium</i> .            |
| 16. <i>quaerō</i> .                          | 41. <i>lacrima</i> .               |
| 17. <i>impediō</i> .                         | 42. <i>ops</i> , sing. and pl.     |
| 18. <i>dubitō</i> .                          | 43. <i>perniciēs</i> .             |
| 19. <i>cōgnōscō</i> ( <i>dē</i> , not acc.). | 44. <i>vulgus</i> (note gender).   |
| 20. <i>impedimentum</i> .                    | 45. <i>dolor</i> .                 |
| 21. <i>dubitātiō</i> .                       | 46. <i>cūstōs</i> .                |
| 22. <i>calamitās</i> .                       | 47. <i>quisquam</i> .              |
| 23. <i>memini</i> .                          | 48. <i>quisque</i> .               |
| 24. <i>reminiscor</i> .                      | 49. <i>studium</i> .               |
| 25. <i>praesidium</i> .                      | 50. <i>liberi</i> .                |

204. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. Genitive of the whole, 23.
2. Ablative of separation, 39.
3. Dative of purpose; dative of agent; 37, 95.
4. Constructions with *oportet* and *dēbeō*, 111, 112.

5. Passive periphrastic conjunction; gerundive 'with *cūrō*, 95.<sup>1</sup>

6. Clauses of result, 144, 145.

205. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 203 and the constructions of 204. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## 206

## CHAPTER XXI

*a.* quī cōgnōscerent misit.

*b.* quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbātur.

*a.* he sent men to ascertain.

*b.* who was considered very skillful in military affairs.

1. Scouts informed Caesar that the ascent was easy.

2. He will send men to find out where the enemy have gone.

3. He said that Considius was considered skillful in military matters.

4. Show me what your plan is.

## 207

## CHAPTER XXII

*a.* equō admissō.

*b.* multō diē.

*c.* quō cōsuērat intervāllō.

*a.* at full speed.

*b.* late in the day.

*c.* at the usual interval.

1. He found out that the enemy were coming at full speed.

2. Late in the day, Caesar was informed that the enemy were not more than a mile from his camp.

<sup>1</sup> When no direct references are given to Part I, the student should search the text and refer to his grammar for the desired construction.

3. 'Do not join battle unless they attack us.
4. He seized<sup>1</sup> the mountain and awaited the enemy.
5. They followed at their usual speed.

## 208

## CHAPTER XXIII

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><i>a.</i> bīduum supererat cum frū-<br/>mentum mētīrī oportet.</p> <p><i>b.</i> cō magis.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> two days remain, within<br/>which (before) grain<br/>ought to be measured<br/>out, etc.</p> <p><i>b.</i> the more so, all the more.</p> |
|--|--|

1. The commander ought to look out for supplies.
2. The more so because only a day remains before we must begin battle.
3. I think they have changed their plan<sup>2</sup> and will cut us off from supplies.

## 209

## CHAPTER XXIV

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><i>a.</i> in summō iugō.</p> <p><i>b.</i> sub prīmam nostram aciem<br/>successērunt.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> on top of the ridge.</p> <p><i>b.</i> they advanced close to our<br/>first line.</p> |
|---|---|

1. He sends two legions to fill up the top of the hill.
2. Order your men to follow with the baggage.
3. They will form<sup>3</sup> a phalanx and advance close to our line.

## 210

## CHAPTER XXV

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><i>a.</i> in eōs impetum fēcērunt.</p> <p><i>b.</i> Gallis māgnō erat impedi-<br/>mentō.</p> <p><i>c.</i> conversa signa intulērunt.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> they attacked them.</p> <p><i>b.</i> the Gauls were greatly<br/>hindered.</p> <p><i>c.</i> they faced about and<br/>charged.</p> |
|---|---|

<sup>1</sup> Do not use the indicative.<sup>2</sup> "changed their plan," use abl. absolute.<sup>3</sup> Do not use the indicative.

1. Caesar removed all of the horses in order to equalize the danger.
2. We are greatly hindered in fighting, because we cannot throw away our shields.
3. When we attacked them, they withdrew to the mountain.
4. They guarded those who<sup>1</sup> had been conquered.
5. Face about and renew the fight.

## 211

## CHAPTER XXVI

<i>a.</i> diū atque ācritēr pūgnātum est.	<i>a.</i> long and fiercely they fought.
<i>b.</i> ad multam noctem.	<i>b.</i> till late at night.
<i>c.</i> sē eōdem locō quō Hel- vētiōs habitūrum.	<i>c.</i> that he would consider them in the same light as the Helvetians.

1. As our men came up, the enemy fought with them long into the night.
2. If you help them in any way, I will consider you in the same light as I do<sup>2</sup> the enemy.
3. There will be a vigorous fight around the baggage.
4. Letters are sent to the Lingones not to help the Helvetians.
5. Our men delayed burying<sup>3</sup> their dead for many days.

## 212

## CHAPTER XXVII

<i>a.</i> dum ea conquīruntur.	<i>a.</i> while they were hunting these up.
<i>b.</i> primā nocte.	<i>b.</i> at nightfall.

<sup>1</sup> Do not use the relative. See 87.<sup>2</sup> "I do," omit.<sup>3</sup> use prep. and noun.



1. When he had demanded their arms, with tears they obeyed.
2. While they were being punished, they wept.
3. At the beginning of night, they did not surrender their arms.
4. I think they will leave camp.

### 213 CHAPTERS XXVIII AND XXIX

a. Helvētiōs revertī iussit.	a. he ordered the Helvetians to return.
b. Allobrogibus imperāvit ut facerent.	b. he ordered the Allobroges to furnish.
c. parem atque.	c. same as.

1. I will order<sup>1</sup> them to hand over the fugitives.
2. The Aedui requested him to grant this.
3. I ordered<sup>2</sup> them to be received in surrender.
4. They have the same liberty as we have.
5. The sum total is many thousand.

### 214 CHAPTER XXX

a. petiērunt utī id facere liceret.	a. they begged permission to do this.
b. iūre iūrاندō nē quis ēnūntiāret inter sē sānxērunt.	b. they ordained by an oath with one another that no one should disclose.

1. At the completion of the war, Caesar got possession of many states.
2. Although<sup>3</sup> I have inflicted punishment on you, still you congratulate me.
3. I beg permission to appoint a council.

<sup>1</sup> Use imperō.

<sup>2</sup> Use iubeō.

<sup>3</sup> See 171.

4. Ordain under oath that no one make war on the Romans.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXI-XXX

215. Review thoroughly the meaning of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of the verbs, and the declensions of nouns and adjectives:

1. revertō.	25. deditō.
2. licet.	26. idem.
3. habeo, in pass.	27. pār.
4. petō.	28. similis.
5. poscō.	29. signum.
6. postulō.	30. rursus.
7. considō.	31. prope.
8. confidō.	32. aciēs.
9. cohortor.	33. lātus.
10. audeō.	34. latus.
11. sustineō.	35. vulnus.
12. bellum inferō, w. dat. or in and acc.	36. nūntius.
13. resistō.	37. vesper.
14. intermittō.	38. ratiō.
15. permittō.	39. ūsus.
16. amittō.	40. salūs.
17. redeō.	41. condiciō.
18. pāreō.	42. atque, see 82.
19. moror.	43. peritus. imperitus.
20. morior.	44. commūnis.
21. aperīō.	45. opportūnus.
22. vereor.	46. medius.
23. dēdō.	47. quantus.
24. dediticius.	48. tantus.
	49. ācriter.

216. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. Translations of the ablative absolute.
2. Ablative of degree of difference, 48.
3. Genitive with adjectives; dative with adjectives, 24, 35.
4. Impersonal verbs, 27. (Consult grammar.)
5. Double accusative with verbs of asking, etc., 15.
6. Construction with *petō*, *quaerō*, *postulō*, 15, 1.
7. Relative clauses, 175.

217. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 215 and the constructions of 216. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## 218

## CHAPTER XXXI

<i>a. semel atque iterum.</i>	<i>a. again and again, more than once.</i>
<i>b. neque recūsātūrōs quō minus essent.</i>	<i>b. nor refuse to be.</i>
<i>c. quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret.</i>	<i>c. who could not be induced to take an oath.</i>
<i>d. nōbilissimī cūiusque.</i>	<i>d. of all of the highest rank.</i>
<i>e. dē omnibus supplicium sūmere.</i>	<i>e. to inflict punishment on all, to punish all.</i>
<i>f. dēterrēre nē māior multitūdō trādūcātur.</i>	<i>f. to frighten a greater multitude from crossing.</i>

1. May we treat with you about what they said?
2. Diviciacus says that the Germans have been called in by the Sequani.
3. We have been defeated<sup>1</sup> again and again and have lost very many men.

<sup>1</sup> Do not use indicative.

4. He says that those who were very powerful have given hostages.
5. We won't refuse to implore aid of the Romans.
6. You are the only one who<sup>1</sup> can't be induced to ask for help.
7. Not being bound<sup>2</sup> by an oath, I shall come to Rome.
8. A serious disaster befell the vanquished.
9. The result will be in a few years that we shall all be driven out of this place.
10. All of the highest rank were defeated.
11. If everything isn't done according to my wish, I shall have to seek other dwellings.
12. Caesar frightened the Germans from emigrating.
13. We shall punish you.

## 219

## CHAPTER XXXII

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><i>a.</i> nē in occultō quidem.</p> <p><i>b.</i> Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> not even in secret.</p> <p><i>b.</i> the Sequani must endure all tortures.</p> |
|---|---|
1. What was the cause of this behavior?<sup>3</sup>
  2. I asked him who made the speech.
  3. He noticed that they did not dare even to complain.
  4. We ought not to dread his cruelty when he is absent.<sup>4</sup>

## 220

## CHAPTER XXXIII

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><i>a.</i> sibi eam rem cūrae futūram.</p> <p><i>b.</i> sibi temperātūrōs quīn exirent.</p> <p><i>c.</i> quam mātūrrimē.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> that he would look out for this matter.</p> <p><i>b.</i> that they would refrain from going forth.</p> <p><i>c.</i> as early as possible, at the earliest possible moment.</p> |
|--|---|

<sup>1</sup> See 174.<sup>2</sup> See 85, 3.<sup>3</sup> rēs.<sup>4</sup> "when . . . absent," use one word.

1. I will look out for that.
2. It will be dangerous for the Romans, if the Germans get into the habit of <sup>1</sup> crossing the Rhine.
3. Ariovistus could not refrain from assuming insolence.
4. I think I ought to undertake this matter at the earliest possible moment.

## 221

## CHAPTER XXXIV

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>a.</i> placuit ei ut mitteret.<br><i>b.</i> quid Caesarī negoti esset. | <i>a.</i> he resolved to send.<br><i>b.</i> what business Caesar had. |
|---|---|

1. I am resolved to treat with you.
2. If I had wished <sup>2</sup> anything, I would have sent ambassadors.
3. Quote 2 indirectly after dixit.<sup>3</sup>
4. What business have you in Gaul anyhow?

## 222

## CHAPTER XXXV

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>a.</i> hanc grātiā referret.<br><i>b.</i> sibi perpetuā amicitiam<br>cum eo futūram. | <i>a.</i> he made this return.<br><i>b.</i> that he would have lasting<br>friendship with him. |
|---|--|

1. What return are you making us?
2. I demand of you not to lead any army across the Rhine.
3. If you should <sup>4</sup> do this, I would have lasting friendship with you.
4. If I gain my request, I'll not neglect my friends.

<sup>1</sup> "get . . . of," use one word.

<sup>2</sup> See 169, 4, 5.

<sup>3</sup> See 123.

<sup>4</sup> See 125.

## 223

## CHAPTER XXXVI

<i>a.</i> quī faceret.	<i>a.</i> since he made (see 173, 4).
<i>b.</i> intellēctūrum quid Ger- mānī possent.	<i>b.</i> he would find out what strength the Germans have.

1. It is a right of war that the conquerors<sup>1</sup> should rule as they wish.
2. I ought to exercise my right, since I have conquered you.
3. If you think we have no strength, come on.
4. If you make war on us, we will pay the taxes.
5. Quote 4 indirectly after dixērunt.

## 224 CHAPTERS XXXVII AND XXXVIII

<i>a.</i> Aeduī veniēbant questum quod Harūdēs populā- rentur.	<i>a.</i> the Aedui came to com- plain because the Haru- des were laying waste.
<i>b.</i> mōns māgnā altitūdine.	<i>b.</i> a mountain of great height.

1. They are complaining because<sup>2</sup> peace cannot be purchased even by giving hostages.
2. I must hasten by forced marches so that their forces may not unite.
3. The enemy are advancing to occupy the town.
4. Resistance cannot easily be made, if we do not take great precautions.
5. The town was very useful for war, because<sup>1</sup> it contained a mountain of great size.
6. A river touches the base of it on either side.

<sup>1</sup> See 71, 7.<sup>2</sup> See 173.

## 225

## CHAPTER XXXIX

<i>a.</i> dum ad Vesontiōnem morātur.	<i>a.</i> while he was delaying near Vesontio.
<i>b.</i> alius aliā causā inlātā.	<i>b.</i> each one presenting a different excuse.
<i>c.</i> petēbat ut discēdere liceret.	<i>c.</i> begged permission to depart.

1. While we were delaying a few days, the whole army was seized with fear.
2. The Germans are men of marvelous bravery.
3. Caesar asserted that this panic started with those who had no experience in war.
4. One presented one excuse, another another.<sup>1</sup>
5. Caesar's troops will not beg permission to advance.
6. He feared that they would not be obedient to the word of command.

## 226

## CHAPTER XL

<i>a.</i> quam in partem.	<i>a.</i> in what direction.
<i>b.</i> sibi persuādēri.	<i>b.</i> that he was persuaded.
<i>c.</i> quantum boni.	<i>c.</i> how much advantage.
<i>d.</i> parēs esse nostrō exercitui.	<i>d.</i> to be a match for our army.
<i>e.</i> neque suī potestātem fecisset.	<i>e.</i> and had not given (them) a chance at him.

1. I have a right to inquire in what direction we are marching.
2. Why did he call a council?
3. We are persuaded<sup>2</sup> that he will not bring war upon us.

<sup>1</sup> See 73.<sup>2</sup> See 38, 2.

4. If you should lose confidence in your commander, what, pray, should you fear?

5. You can judge how much courage the enemy have, now that the Cimbri have been defeated.<sup>1</sup>

6. The Romans feared that the Germans were their match.

7. If you give me a chance at you, I will defeat you more by stratagem than valor.

8. I know that Caesar will take care of this.

9. I know that whoever does not advance<sup>2</sup> has no confidence in the general.

10. Which is the stronger, duty or fear?

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXXI-XL

227. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following verbs, memorizing principal parts of verbs, declensions of adjectives and nouns:

1. recūsō.
2. dēspērō (*dē*, not acc.).
3. supplicium sūmō.
4. adsuēficiō.
5. adsuēscō.
6. suscipiō.
7. placeō.
8. grātiā referō.
9. grātiā habēō.
10. grātiās agō.
11. neglegō.
12. praecaveō.
13. arcessō.

14. accēdō.
15. experior.
16. efficiō.
17. adsum.
18. dēsum.
19. impellō.
20. temperō.
21. dēterreō.
22. cruciātus.
23. absēns.
24. mātūrē.
25. negōtium.
26. omninō.

<sup>1</sup> Use participle.

<sup>2</sup> See 166.



27. perpetuus.	39. magnitūdō.
28. iterum.	40. difficultās.
29. semel.	41. conloquium.
30. vērō.	42. commeātus.
31. paulatim.	43. sēdēs.
32. paulisper.	44. cōsuētūdō.
33. paulum.	45. uter.
34. simulatīō.	46. uterque.
35. ordō.	47. plērumque.
36. palūs.	48. hūc.
37. facinus.	49. praeterea.
38. diligentia.	50. subitō.

228. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. Ablative of description, 49.
2. Genitive of description, 22.
3. Genitive of the gerund and gerundive with *causā*, 142. 2.
4. Supine in *um*, 96.
5. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, 173.
6. Substantive clauses with verbs of hindering, refusing, and with verbs of accomplishing, 150.
7. Indirect questions, 134.

229. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 227 and the constructions of 228. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

*a.* ei grātiās ēgit.  
*b.* ā nostris abesse.

*a.* thanked him.  
*b.* were distant from ours.

1. We thank Caesar for delivering<sup>1</sup> such a speech.
2. They were quite ready to apologize to me.
3. The policy of the campaign is the commander's, not ours.
4. Scouts informed us that the enemy were fifty miles away from our camp.

## 231

## CHAPTER XLII

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><i>a.</i> si quid opus factō esset.</p> <p><i>b.</i> in locō habitūrum.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> if there were any need of action.</p> <p><i>b.</i> would regard as.</p> |
|--|--|
1. You may do what you have asked for.
  2. Don't refuse<sup>2</sup> me when I ask.
  3. Caesar was afraid that the conference would be broken off.
  4. If there is any need of cavalry, let the soldiers be put on horses.
  5. Regard us as your friends.

## 232

## CHAPTER XLIII

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><i>a.</i> ubi eō ventum est.</p> <p><i>b.</i> ipsis cum Aeduis intercēderent.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> when they came there.</p> <p><i>b.</i> existed between themselves and the Aedui.</p> |
|--|---|
1. Ariovistus said he would carry on the conference<sup>3</sup> on horseback.
  2. When they had come to the mound, Caesar showed what gifts the Senate had bestowed.
  3. Reasons for intimacy exist between you and them.

<sup>1</sup> "for delivering" = because he delivered.

<sup>2</sup> See 116.

<sup>3</sup> "carry on the conference," one word.

4. I was called a friend by the Senate before you came into Gaul.
5. I will make this demand, not to cross with your army.

## 233

## CHAPTER XLIV

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><i>a.</i> trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē rogātum ā Gallis.</p> <p><i>b.</i> sibi praesidiō esse.</p> <p><i>c.</i> quod trādūcat.</p> <p><i>d.</i> sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> that he had crossed the Rhine at the request of the Gauls.</p> <p><i>b.</i> to be a protection to him.</p> <p><i>c.</i> as to his leading. (trādūcat would be indicative in direct discourse.)</p> <p><i>d.</i> that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people.</p> |
|---|--|

1. I will leave home at your request.
2. I did not make war on you,<sup>1</sup> but you on me.
3. If you wish to enjoy peace, pay the tribute.
4. I crossed the Rhine voluntarily to impose<sup>2</sup> a tax on the vanquished.
5. If you should be a hindrance to me, I would not seek your friendship.
6. As to my leaving my territory, I am doing this to defend myself.
7. I say that you made an attack before we did.<sup>3</sup>
8. Why ought you to use our help?
9. I am not so simple as not to know that Caesar is pretending friendship.
10. He says he will do whatever you say.

<sup>1</sup> Note the order of the Latin in the text, . . . nōn sēsē intulisse.

<sup>2</sup> "to impose" — express in several ways.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

## 234 CHAPTERS XLV AND XLVI

<i>a.</i> Galliam esse Ariovisti.	<i>a.</i> that Gaul belonged to Ariovistus.
<i>b.</i> quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset.	<i>b.</i> whom the Roman people had pardoned.
<i>c.</i> committendum nōn putābat ut dicī posset.	<i>c.</i> he thought that no ground should be given for saying.

1. My habit doesn't allow me to<sup>1</sup> desert my allies.
2. Gaul belongs to Caesar rather than to Ariovistus.
3. They would have enjoyed their own laws, had you pardoned<sup>2</sup> them.
4. Caesar orders his men not to throw stones at the Germans.
5. No ground ought to be given for saying that we excluded them from the conference.
6. Don't hurl back your weapons.

## 235 CHAPTER XLVII

<i>a.</i> bīduō post.	<i>a.</i> two days afterwards.
<i>b.</i> retinēri quā conicerent.	<i>b.</i> to be kept from hurling.
<i>c.</i> quā multā ūtēbātur.	<i>c.</i> which he spoke fluently.

1. Three days afterwards he said he would send some one as an ambassador.
2. I will keep the enemy from<sup>3</sup> throwing stones at you.
3. If you cannot go yourself, send a man of great courage.
4. Can you speak Latin fluently?

<sup>1</sup> Don't use infinitive.<sup>2</sup> See 123.<sup>3</sup> See 150, (1) and (a).

## 236

## CHAPTER XLVIII

<i>a.</i> ut ei potestās nōn deēsset.	<i>a.</i> that he might not lack the opportunity.
<i>b.</i> singulī singulōs.	<i>b.</i> one apiece.
<i>c.</i> sī quid erat dūrius.	<i>c.</i> if there was any difficulty.

1. If there is<sup>1</sup> any difficulty, they will not lack the opportunity.

2. If there were any difficulty, I would not lack the opportunity.

3. If there should be any difficulty, we should not lack the opportunity.

4. They will select one horse apiece.

5. We shall have to fight a cavalry battle.

## 237

## CHAPTERS XLIX AND L

<i>a.</i> quam ob rem.	<i>a.</i> why.
<i>b.</i> utrum ex ūsū esset necne.	<i>b.</i> whether it was expedient or not.

1. Caesar chose a place beyond the place where the enemy was.

2. He will send the third line to fortify<sup>2</sup> the camp.

3. At the completion of the work, they retreated into camp.

4. I will ask him why he does not give us a chance to fight.

5. Is it the divine will for us to storm the camp?

6. Tell me whether the moon is full or not.

<sup>1</sup> Review 126.

<sup>2</sup> Express in several ways.

## 238

## CHAPTERS LI AND LII

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>a.</i> proximō diē, postrīdiē ēius diē.<br><i>b.</i> repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī insilirent. | <i>a.</i> on the next day.<br><i>b.</i> there were very many of our men who jumped, etc. |
|---|--|

1. On the next day he did not use the soldiers of the legions for show.

2. At our departure we shall implore you not to leave any hope in flight.

3. I will put an officer in charge of each legion.

4. They attacked us so quickly that a hand to hand encounter resulted.

5. Send the cavalry to help them.

6. There are many who<sup>1</sup> are engaged in the battle line.

## 239

## CHAPTERS LIII AND LIV

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>a.</i> hostēs terga vertērunt.<br><i>b.</i> neque prius fugere dēstiterunt quam pervēnērunt.<br><i>c.</i> sē praesente. | <i>a.</i> the enemy fled.<br><i>b.</i> and they did not cease flying until they arrived.<br><i>c.</i> in his presence. |
|--|--|

1. When they cannot rely on their strength, they will flee.

2. Our men did not cease pursuing until they killed many thousand.

3. He was bound and dragged in flight.

4. Ariovistus is said to have escaped in a small boat that he had found.<sup>2</sup>

5. They cast lots in our presence.

6. Now that Ariovistus had been defeated, Caesar thought he was safe.

<sup>1</sup> See 174.

<sup>2</sup> "that . . . found" — one word.

## 240 REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XLI-LIII

Review thoroughly the following vocabulary, memorizing the principal parts of the verbs, and the declensions of the nouns and adjectives:

- |                                 |   |                           |
|---------------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| 1. certior fiō                  | } ( <i>dē</i> and abl. of thing.<br><i>per</i> or <i>ab</i> with person.) | 25. adulēscēns.           |
| 2. certiorē<br>faciō            |   | 26. sententia.            |
| 3. tollō.                       |   | 27. regiō.                |
| 4. interpōnō.                   |   | 28. labor.                |
| 5. intercēdō.                   |   | 29. dētrimentum.          |
| 6. interdicō.                   |   | 30. praeimium.            |
| 7. exeō.                        |   | 31. aditus.               |
| 8. dēfendō.                     |   | 32. incolumis.            |
| 9. simulō.                      |   | 33. idōneus, cf. aliēnus. |
| 10. ignōscō.                    |   | 34. iniquus.              |
| 11. cōficiō.                    |   | 35. aequus.               |
| 12. sē recipere.                |   | 36. utrimque.             |
| 13. reperīō.                    |   | 37. statim.               |
| 14. invenīō.                    |   | 38. comminus.             |
| 15. praeificiō.                 |   | 39. complūrēs.            |
| 16. cōnsulō, with dat. and acc. |   | 40. dūrus.                |
| 17. doceō.                      |   | 41. tēlum.                |
| 18. trānseō.                    |   | 42. sponte.               |
| 19. circumsistō.                |   | 43. stipendium.           |
| 20. trānsducō.                  |   | 44. domus.                |
| 21. nanciscor.                  |   | 45. eō (adv.).            |
| 22. tergum.                     |   | 46. ultrō.                |
| 23. subsidium.                  |   | 47. factum.               |
| 24. genus.                      |   | 48. opus, indecl.         |
|                                 |   | 49. opus, eris.           |

241. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. The predicate genitive (see grammar).
2. Accusative with compounds, *circum, praeter, trans*.
3. Double questions, direct and indirect, 80.
4. Intransitive verbs, 32.
5. Clauses introduced by *antequam* and *priusquam*, 154.
6. Conditional sentences, three types, 121-125.

**242.** The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 240 and the constructions of 241. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.



## BOOK II

**NOTE.** Sentences in groups A are for those who begin to read Caesar at Book II. Those in groups B are for students who have read Book I. The student should not depend on the English-Latin vocabulary for the Latin words. The Latin text upon which each exercise is based should always be consulted for the proper words or phrases.

243

### CHAPTER I

<i>a.</i> certior fiēbat.	<i>a.</i> he was informed.
<i>b.</i> inter sē dare.	<i>b.</i> were exchanging, were giving to one another.
<i>c.</i> exercitum hiemāre molestē ferēbant.	<i>c.</i> they were annoyed that an army should winter.

**A.** 1. We are informed; he will inform Caesar; I have informed them.

2. We exchange; you exchange.

3. They feared that Gaul would be subdued.

4. I am annoyed that you are conspiring against me.

5. Some desire a revolution.

6. I am informed that they are leading an army against us.

**B.** 1. They informed him that we were exchanging hostages.

2. I am afraid that they will pass the winter in Gaul.

3. We are grieved that Caesar was not informed that they were conspiring.

4. Those who can hire men will generally usurp royal power.

## 244

## CHAPTER II

<i>a.</i> quī dēdūceret Q. Pedium mīsīt.	<i>a.</i> he sent Quintus Pedius to lead.
<i>b.</i> dat negōtium Senonibūs utī cōgnōscant.	<i>b.</i> he employs the Senones to find out.

- A.** 1. I will enroll troops among the Gauls.  
 2. I sent them to find out about this.  
 3. We employed him to inform us.  
 4. They announced that Caesar was coming to the army.  
 5. We ought not to hesitate.<sup>1</sup>

- B.** 1. We will send an officer to enroll two legions.  
 2. We gave it in charge<sup>2</sup> of Pedius to gather an army  
 together.  
 3. He was informed that they had broken<sup>3</sup> camp and  
 were setting out toward the Belgae.

## 245

## CHAPTER III

<i>a.</i> sē suaque omnia.	<i>a.</i> themselves and all their pos- sessions.
<i>b.</i> nē Suessionēs quidem.	<i>b.</i> not even the Suessiones. (Note order of Latin words.)
<i>c.</i> dēterrēre quī cum his cōn- sentīrent.	<i>c.</i> to prevent from conspiring with these.

- A.** 1. Myself and all my property; ourselves and all  
 our possessions.  
 2. The Germans who live in Gaul enjoy their own laws.

<sup>1</sup> See III.

<sup>2</sup> "gave . . . charge of"; does this mean same as "employed"?

<sup>3</sup> Use participle.

3. He said that<sup>1</sup> the Germans who lived in Gaul enjoyed their own laws.

4. He is not ready to give even hostages.

5. We will prevent them from<sup>2</sup> aiding you.

B. 1. We who have given you all our property will not conspire against you.

2. Write 1 indirectly after *dixerunt*.

3. We have prevented them from<sup>2</sup> enjoying even their own laws.

4. Caesar came so quickly that the Remi said they would help him.

## 246.

## CHAPTER IV

*a.* *quī Cimbros ingredi prohibuerint.*

*b.* *sibi sūmerent.*

*c.* *plūrimum valēre.*

*a.* who kept the Cimbri from entering.

*b.* they were assuming.

*c.* were the most powerful.

A. 1. What can you do in war?

2. I will ask him what you can do in war.

3. We will keep them from settling there.

4. I have found out that they have entered our territory.

5. You are assuming great authority.

6. How large a number has each one promised?

7. They are the most powerful, because they have many soldiers.

8. Quote 7 indirectly after *dixit*.

9. The chief command of the whole war will be conferred upon Galba.

10. The Nervii were regarded as extremely cruel.

B. 1. I will ask him who are descended from the Germans.

<sup>1</sup> Review 165-169.

<sup>2</sup> See 150, (1) and (2).

2. We are the only ones who<sup>1</sup> have expelled the Gauls.
3. They will prevent us from assuming great authority.
4. They are the most powerful, because they can furnish a hundred thousand men.
5. Quote 4 indirectly after *dixit*.
6. I have found out that the Nervii were considered extremely cruel.

## 247

## CHAPTER V

<i>a.</i> <i>nē cōnfigendum sit.</i>	<i>a.</i> lest they should have to contend.
<i>b.</i> <i>commeātūs ut portārī pos-</i> <i>sent efficiēbat.</i>	<i>b.</i> made it possible for supplies to be brought.
<i>c.</i> <i>in altitudinem pedum XII</i> <i>vallō.</i>	<i>c.</i> by a wall twelve feet high.

- A.**
1. It concerns us.
  2. We shall be compelled<sup>2</sup> to fight with the enemy.
  3. We learned that Caesar had pitched his camp.
  4. I will make it possible for you to go.
  5. This ditch will be six feet deep.
  6. Caesar ordered<sup>3</sup> them to bring supplies.
- B.**
1. It concerned us that they keep the enemy apart.
  2. If you do this, we shall have to fight.
  3. He learned that troops had been sent and were being led across the river.
  4. The river makes it possible for me to be safe.
  5. The bridge will be one hundred feet long.
  6. We shall order<sup>3</sup> them to hurry.

<sup>1</sup> Is this a simple relative clause?

<sup>2</sup> "we . . . fight," see III. 95.

<sup>3</sup> What construction would follow *imperō*? See 147.

## 248

## CHAPTER VI

<i>a.</i> mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est.	<i>a.</i> the wall was stripped of its defenders.
<i>b.</i> testūdine factā mūrum subruunt.	<i>b.</i> by forming a testudo they undermine the wall.
<i>c.</i> in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nūllī.	<i>c.</i> nobody could keep a foothold on the wall.

- A.** 1. The town is two miles from the river.  
 2. We have cleared the town of soldiers.  
 3. This was done by hurling stones.  
 4. We cannot keep a foothold on the wall.  
 5. They said that Iccius was in command of the town.

**B.** 1. A town named Bibrax was attacked by the Belgae on their march.

2. We began to clear the town of soldiers.  
 3. By hurling many javelins they put an end to<sup>1</sup> the attack.  
 4. Nobody could<sup>2</sup> hurl stones against the wall.  
 5. Iccius says that the town will be taken, unless Caesar sends him help.

## 249

## CHAPTER VII

<i>a.</i> funditōrēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit.	<i>a.</i> he sends the slingers to aid the townsmen.
<i>b.</i> apud oppidum morātī, omnibus vicīs incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris contendērunt.	<i>b.</i> after lingering about the town, and after all the villages had been burned, they hastened to Caesar's camp. (Note change in use of the participle.)

<sup>1</sup> "put an end to" = make an end of.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use possum.

- A.** 1. I will send men to help you.  
 2. For the same reason we employed the slingers.  
 3. After pitching<sup>1</sup> camp, they lingered in the town.  
 4. Many buildings were burned.

**B.** 1. Caesar used the messengers as guides and sent soldiers to help them.

2. After gaining possession<sup>2</sup> of the town and pitching<sup>1</sup> his camp, he waited for them a little while.  
 3. They were more than three miles off.

250

## CHAPTER VIII

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>a.</i> tantum . . . quantum.             | <i>a.</i> as much . . . as.                           |
| <i>b.</i> quod tantum multitudine poterant. | <i>b.</i> because they were so strong in numbers.     |
| <i>c.</i> suās cōpiās ēductās instrūxērunt. | <i>c.</i> they led their forces out and drew them up. |

- A.** 1. Our men have a high reputation for valor.  
 2. The place was suitable for<sup>3</sup> pitching a camp.  
 3. The hill extends as far as we can see.  
 4. He did this so as not to be surrounded.  
 5. We are very strong in numbers.  
 6. I will lead<sup>4</sup> out and draw up my troops.

**B.** 1. He perceived that the place was suitable for<sup>3</sup> pitching camp.

2. That hill covers as much ground as an army can occupy.  
 3. They are so strong in numbers that they can surround us as we fight.  
 4. After digging a ditch, he stationed war engines.

<sup>1</sup> See 89, 1.<sup>2</sup> See 85, 2.<sup>3</sup> Do not use the dative.<sup>4</sup> Avoid using two coördinate verbs.

5. We will lead<sup>1</sup> the legion out of the town and draw it up.

### REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I-VIII

251. Review thoroughly the meaning of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of verbs, and the declension of nouns and adjectives.

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. studeō.                                       | 26. certus, compare. |
| 2. cōgnōscō.                                     | 27. rēgnum.          |
| 3. dubitō.                                       | 28. negōtium.        |
| 4. dēterreō.                                     | 29. obses.           |
| 5. prohibeō.                                     | 30. celeritās.       |
| 6. iuvō.   | 31. celeriter.       |
| 7. audeō.  | 32. plūrimum.        |
| 8. valeō.  | 33. quantus.         |
| 9. possum.                                       | 34. tantus.          |
| 10. habeor.                                      | 35. māgnitūdō.       |
| 11. quaerō.                                      | 36. commeātus.       |
| 12. postulō.                                     | 37. potestās.        |
| 13. distineō (note the force<br>of <i>dis</i> ). | 38. imperium.        |
| 14. imperō.                                      | 39. paulum.          |
| 15. iubeō.                                       | 40. paulō.           |
| 16. cōgō.  | 41. paulisper.       |
| 17. coepi.                                       | 42. paulātim.        |
| 18. incipiō.                                     | 43. idōneus.         |
| 19. praefficiō.                                  | 44. uterque.         |
| 20. praesum.                                     | 45. quisque.         |
| 21. contendō.                                    | 46. medius.          |
| 22. cōnficiō.                                    | 47. summus, compare. |
| 23. efficiō.                                     | 48. alter.           |
| 24. obtineō.                                     | 49. plērumque.       |
| 25. occupō.                                      | 50. nē . . . quidem. |

<sup>1</sup> Avoid using two coördinate verbs.

252. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Dative of possession, of purpose, and the dative used with adjectives, 34, 35, 37.
2. Ablative of separation. When must a preposition be used? 39.
3. Accusative of extent of space, and duration of time, 16.
4. Construction with *quaerō* and *postulō*, 15. 1.
5. Uses of *quod* to introduce relative, causal, and substantive clauses, 173.
6. Substantive clauses after verbs of *doubting*, verbs of *hindering*, and verbs of *fearing*, 135, 136, 150.

253. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 251 and the constructions of 252. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

254

## CHAPTER IX

<i>a.</i> sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs expectābant.	<i>a.</i> the enemy were waiting to see if our men would cross.
<i>b.</i> eō cōsiliō ut castellum ex- pūgnārent.	<i>b.</i> with the design of taking the redoubt.

A. 1. A river was between Caesar's army and the enemy.

2. We are waiting to see if they will cross.
3. Caesar will not begin to cross.
4. They are doing this with the design of capturing the camp.
5. Titurius commands the soldiers.



- B. 1. We are waiting to see if they will attack us.  
 2. If<sup>1</sup> the cavalry battle is favorable to neither party, we will not begin to cross.  
 3. The enemy are hastening to the river with the design of finding fords.  
 4. Who will be in charge of the redoubt when the enemy cross?

## 255

## CHAPTER X

<i>a.</i> <i>prīmōs circumventōs interfecerunt.</i>	<i>a.</i> they surrounded and killed the first.
<i>b.</i> <i>cōstituērunt optimum esse quemque revertī.</i>	<i>b.</i> they decided that it was best for each to return.
<i>c.</i> <i>his persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur nōn poterat.</i>	<i>c.</i> these could not be persuaded to wait any longer.

- A. 1. A fierce battle is being fought.  
 2. We attacked them while<sup>2</sup> they were crossing.  
 3. They will surround<sup>3</sup> and kill him.  
 4. It is best for each to fight in his own territory.  
 5. I can't be persuaded to return home.  
 6. We assembled to defend our homes.

- B. 1. They informed Caesar that a fierce battle was being fought.  
 2. They drove them back<sup>3</sup> and slew many of the enemy.  
 3. It is best for us to use our own grain supplies.  
 4. We shall attack the enemy while<sup>2</sup> they are crossing.  
 5. We can't be persuaded to fight in foreign territory.

<sup>1</sup> "if . . . is," do not use *sī* and the indicative.

<sup>2</sup> "while . . . crossing"—express by one word in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> See 88.

## 256

## CHAPTER XI

<i>a.</i> fēcērunt ut profectiō vidē- rētur.	<i>a.</i> they made their departure seem.
<i>b.</i> primā lūce; sub occāsum sōlis.	<i>b.</i> at daybreak; at sunset.
<i>c.</i> exauditō clāmōre.	<i>c.</i> on hearing the shout.

- A.** 1. Everybody is leaving camp.  
 2. Their departure made Caesar fear an ambushade.  
 3. At dawn, the fact was established.  
 4. Why did they withdraw?  
 5. On seeing our men, they fled several miles.  
 6. At sunset, they will be out of danger.

**B.** 1. Caesar could not understand why they were hastening home.

2. Their departure would<sup>1</sup> have made any one fear an ambushade.

3. At daybreak, the cavalry attacked the rear.

4. Those in front, on seeing the enemy, were thrown into confusion.

5. At sunset, they had fled as far as they could.

## 257

## CHAPTERS XII AND XIII

<i>a.</i> id paucīs dēfendentibus ex- pūgnāre nōn potuit.	<i>a.</i> although there were few de- fenders, he could not cap- ture.
<i>b.</i> quae ad oppūgnandum ūsui erant.	<i>b.</i> what was useful in besieg- ing.
<i>c.</i> celeritāte Rōmānōrum per- mōti.	<i>c.</i> alarmed at the speed of the Romans.
<i>d.</i> māiōrēs nātū.	<i>d.</i> the elders.

<sup>1</sup> "would have made" — See 127, 118.

A. 1. On the next day, the enemy recovered from their alarm.

2. Although the wall was high, he tried to take the town.

3. Sheds are useful in besieging.

4. The Suesiones were alarmed at the towers.

5. Caesar received the two sons of Galba as hostages.

6. The elders said they had not fought against Caesar.

7. The women approached the camp with outstretched hands.

8. I will come under your protection.

B. 1. Although he saw the height of the wall, Caesar tried to take the town.

2. Ditches and walls are useful in defending a town.

3. The Gauls were alarmed at these works and sought peace of Caesar.

4. Galba's two sons were received by Caesar as hostages.

5. The elders approached the camp.

6. With hands outspread, the women urged their countrymen to surrender to Caesar.

## 258

## CHAPTER XIV

a. populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse.

b. petere Bellovacōs ut ūtātur.

a. had waged war on the Roman people.

b. that the Bellovaci begged him to use.

A. 1. How great a war did you wage on the enemy?

2. We understand how great a war you waged on them.

3. I begged him to do this.

4. He says that those who did this are fleeing to Britain.

**B.** 1. We understand who have brought war on the Romans.

2. If you do this, I will beg Caesar to show his characteristic kindness.

3. Quote 2 indirectly <sup>1</sup> after dixit.

## 259

## CHAPTERS XV AND XVI

(a) nūllum aditum esse ad eōs  
mercātōribus.

(b) nihil vinī.

(c) hīs persuāserant utī expe-  
rīrentur.

(a) that traders have no access  
to them.

(b) no wine.

(c) they had persuaded these  
to try.

- A.** 1. Caesar said he would demand many hostages.  
2. We will surrender ourselves and all our property.  
3. Caesar had access to the Gauls.  
4. The Nervii allow no wine to be brought into their territory.  
5. They learned that Caesar had marched many miles.  
6. I shall persuade them to wait for me.  
7. The enemy are on the other side of the river.

**B.** 1. Caesar said he would demand hostages and make inquiry about their customs.

2. Will you surrender yourself and all your property?  
3. The Nervii have no wine in their country.  
4. They learned that Caesar had marched many miles.  
5. I shall persuade him to wait for me on the other side of the river.

<sup>1</sup> Review carefully 165-169.

## 260

## CHAPTER XVII.

<i>a.</i> explorātōrēs praemittit qui locum castris idōneum dēligant.	<i>a.</i> he sends ahead scouts to choose a place suitable for a camp.
<i>b.</i> quicquam negōti.	<i>b.</i> any trouble.
<i>c.</i> nōn omittendum sibi cōn- silium Nervii existimāvē- runt.	<i>c.</i> the Nervii thought they ought not to disregard the advice.

- A.** 1. He sent ahead men to do this.  
 2. They observed our army's usual manner of marching.  
 3. There will not be any trouble in routing<sup>1</sup> the first legion.  
 4. Our strength is in cavalry forces.  
 5. They bent the trees to furnish<sup>2</sup> a fortification.  
 6. I think that the Nervii ought not to disregard this advice.  
 7. We can't even look through the hedge.

- B.** 1. They sent men to observe our manner of march.  
 2. If the first legion is routed, there will not be any trouble in plundering<sup>1</sup> the baggage.  
 3. Our strength was in cavalry forces.  
 4. The hedge furnishes a defense which<sup>3</sup> cannot be entered.  
 5. Do you think that the Nervii ought to disregard this advice?

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS IX-XVII

**261.** Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of verbs, and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

<sup>1</sup> Use infinitive.<sup>2</sup> "to furnish," cf. *praedandi causā*.<sup>3</sup> See 174.

1. cōnor.	26. dēligō.
2. exspectō.	27. omittō.
3. cōnsistō.	28. cōnsuētūdō.
4. cōstituō.	29. impediō.
5. expūgnō.	30. impedimentum.
6. oppūgnō.	31. appropinquō.
7. interficiō.	32. complūrēs.
8. intereō.	33. ūsus.
9. persuādeō.	34. cōsillium.
10. moror.	35. secundus.
11. morior.	36. aliēnus.
12. dēficiō.	37. iniquus.
13. dēsum.	38. rēs frūmentāria.
14. intellegō.	39. proficiscor.
15. properō.	40. profectiō.
16. mātūrō.	41. clāmor.
17. dēsistō.	42. insidiae.
18. sē recipere.	43. agmen.
19. pandō.	44. novus.
20. accēdō.	45. pauci.
21. inferō.	46. aditus.
22. experior.	47. nihil.
23. dēdō.	48. quisquam.
24. dēditlō.	49. ineō.
25. dēditicius.	50. initium.

262. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Genitive of the whole, 23.
2. Passive periphrastic, 95.
3. Construction with *persuādeō*, 147.
4. Indirect questions, 134.
5. Sequence of tenses, 131-133.
6. Consecutive clauses dependent on *faciō*, *efficiō*, etc.

263. The instructor should form original English sentences, employing the words of 261 and the constructions of 262. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## 264 CHAPTERS XVIII AND XIX

<i>a.</i> flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.	<i>a.</i> the depth of the river was about three feet.
<i>b.</i> ratiō aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dē- tulerant.	<i>b.</i> the arrangement was differ- ent from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii.
<i>c.</i> ut aciem cōstituerant.	<i>c.</i> just as they had drawn up the line of battle.
<i>d.</i> impetum in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt.	<i>d.</i> they made an attack on our cavalry.

- A. 1. The river Sambre has been mentioned above.  
 2. One cannot see<sup>1</sup> into the woods.  
 3. The height of the hill was about two hundred feet.  
 4. The plan of march is different from what the enemy thought.  
 5. Two legions will guard the rear.  
 6. We will not retreat into the woods.  
 7. They attacked us as we were retreating.  
 8. He will do just as he has agreed.  
 9. After the camp had been fortified, we saw the enemy.  
 10. The cavalry was easily routed and thrown into confusion.

B. 1. The foot of the hill is cleared of woods, so that the enemy cannot hide.

<sup>1</sup> "one cannot see" = it cannot be seen.

2. The hill that had been chosen for a camp was about two hundred feet high.

3. Caesar's custom is different from what has been reported.

4. They didn't dare to attack the Romans as they retreated.

5. How far will they follow us?

6. We will do just as we have agreed.

7. When the cavalry had been routed, they made for Caesar's camp.

## 265

## CHAPTER XX

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>a.</i> Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda.</li> <li><i>b.</i> cum ad arma concurrī oportēret.</li> <li><i>c.</i> quod singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere vetuerat.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>a.</i> Caesar had to do everything at once.</li> <li><i>b.</i> when they must rush to arms.</li> <li><i>c.</i> because Caesar had forbidden the lieutenants to leave their respective legions.</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

**A.** 1. You must<sup>1</sup> do this quickly.

2. Others show us what we ought<sup>1</sup> to do.

3. Caesar will forbid the lieutenants to give the signal to their respective legions.

4. The experience of the soldiers helped them.

5. We will execute by ourselves what seems best.

**B.** 1. When the signal is given the soldiers must<sup>1</sup> run to arms.

2. Others ought<sup>1</sup> not to show us what we have<sup>1</sup> to do.

3. Caesar had ordered the lieutenants to draw up their respective legions.

<sup>1</sup> Review carefully III, 95.



## 266

## CHAPTERS XXI AND XXII

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><i>a.</i> quam in partem.</p> <p><i>b.</i> quō tēlum adicī posset.</p> <p><i>c.</i> aliae aliā in parte.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> in that direction in which.</p> <p><i>b.</i> a spear's throw.</p> <p><i>c.</i> some in one place, others in another.</p> |
|---|---|

**A.** 1. He will go in that direction in which he has been ordered.

2. We will urge the soldiers to <sup>1</sup> remember this.

3. He is not more than a stone's throw off.

4. We did not have time to prepare our javelins.

5. You will lose time for <sup>2</sup> fighting.

6. Some of the soldiers were in one place, others in another.

7. What is needed in each town?

8. The inequality of things was so great that various results of fortune followed.

**B.** 1. We urged the soldiers to <sup>1</sup> go in that direction in which they had been ordered.

2. Since the enemy are not more than a stone's throw off, you will not have time to encourage the soldiers.

3. They will lose time for <sup>2</sup> fighting.

4. Some of the soldiers fought in one place, others in another.

5. We can provide what is needed in each town.

## 267

## CHAPTER XXIII

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><i>a.</i> ā fronte.</p> <p><i>b.</i> duce Boduōgnātō.</p> <p><i>c.</i> nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllo.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> in front.</p> <p><i>b.</i> under the leadership of Boduognatus.</p> <p><i>c.</i> not far from it.</p> |
|---|--|

<sup>1</sup> Do not use the infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use the dative.

- A.** 1. These legions had opposed the Atrebrates.  
 2. They were killed while trying to cross the river.  
 3. The enemy will not hesitate to renew the fight.  
 4. The whole camp was exposed in front.  
 5. The seventh legion is stationed not far from the twelfth.  
 6. Under Caesar's leadership the camp was nearly surrounded:

- B.** 1. Many of the enemy were killed while resisting<sup>1</sup> our men.  
 2. The enemy renewed the fight<sup>2</sup> and hurled<sup>2</sup> their weapons.  
 3. The camp was exposed in front, because two legions were stationed not far from the right wing.  
 4. Under Caesar's leadership we shall not hesitate to engage with the Gauls.

## 268

## CHAPTER XXIV

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><i>a.</i> adversis hostibus occurrēbant.</p> <p><i>b.</i> cālōnēs praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant.</p> <p><i>c.</i> alii aliam in partem ferēbantur.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> they met the enemy face to face.</p> <p><i>b.</i> the camp followers took to flight in utter confusion.</p> <p><i>c.</i> some rushed in one direction, others in another.</p> |
|--|--|

- A.** 1. I said that the infantry were routed by the enemy.  
 2. I met him face to face.  
 3. We took to flight in great confusion.  
 4. Some were alarmed by one<sup>3</sup> thing, others by another.  
 5. The camp was filling up with the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> See 87.<sup>2</sup> Do not use coördinate verbs.<sup>3</sup> See 73.

6. The soldiers were nearly surrounded and held fast.  
 7. It was reported that the Nervii had captured our camp.

- B.** 1. When we retreated, we met him face to face.  
 2. I took to flight in great confusion.  
 3. Some were alarmed by one<sup>1</sup> thing, others by another.  
 4. It is said that the cavalry had been sent to Caesar as help.  
 5. The Nervii scattered our men and almost took the camp.

## 269

## CHAPTER XXV

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><i>a.</i> ubi milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit.<br/> <i>b.</i> signa inferre.<br/> <i>c.</i> cum quisque operam nāvare cuperet.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> when he saw that the soldiers hindered one another in fighting.<br/> <i>b.</i> to charge.<br/> <i>c.</i> since each one wished to do his best.</p> |
|---|---|

- A.** 1. We hinder one another in fighting.  
 2. Publius Sextius Baculus was exhausted by many severe wounds.  
 3. There is no reserve that<sup>2</sup> can be brought up.  
 4. Although<sup>3</sup> many had been killed, Caesar did not abandon the contest.  
 5. He snatched a shield from a soldier.<sup>4</sup>  
 6. We will charge, so as to open up the ranks.  
 7. Each man will do his best.

- B.** 1. Owing to the crowded condition of the soldiers, we hindered one another in fighting.

<sup>1</sup> See 73.<sup>2</sup> See 174.<sup>3</sup> See 87, 89.<sup>4</sup> Cf. militi in the text.

2. Although<sup>1</sup> many are exhausted by wounds, Caesar will not abandon the contest.

3. There is no reserve that<sup>2</sup> can be brought up.

4. We will charge so that the soldiers may use their swords more easily.

5. Each man will do his best, so as to infuse hope in the general.

## 270

## CHAPTER XXVI

a. tribūnōs monuit ut conversa signa in hostis inferrent.

b. cum alius aliī subsidium ferret.

c. cum quantō in periculō imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent.

a. he urged the tribunes to face about and charge the enemy.

b. since they helped one another.

c. when they found out in what danger the general was involved.

A. 1. I urged them to<sup>3</sup> take a stand near by.

2. Face about and charge the enemy.

3. They helped one another.

4. I don't fear being seen by the enemy.

5. Labienus learned what the enemy were doing.

6. He learned that the commander was involved in danger.

B. 1. We will urge them to<sup>3</sup> help one another.

2. Don't<sup>4</sup> be afraid, face about and charge the Nervii.

3. The soldiers fear being hard pressed by the enemy.

4. Labienus could see what danger the camp was in.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XVIII-XXVI

271. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of verbs, and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

<sup>1</sup> See 87, 89.

<sup>2</sup> See 174.

<sup>3</sup> Review 147.

<sup>4</sup> See 116.

1. pellō.	26. prōvideō.
2. compellō.	27. convertō.
3. compleō.	28. aliter.
4. nāscor.	29. ōrdō.
5. subsequor.	30. ratiō.
6. dēferō.	31. dēclivis.
7. discēdō.	32. acclivitās.
8. accēdō.	33. pars.
9. arcessō.	34. pār.
10. praescribō.	35. apertus.
11. doceō.	36. alius.
12. vetō.	37. alter.
13. administrō.	38. altus.
14. concurrō.	39. opera.
15. occurrō.	40. opus.
16. obveniō.	41. opus, eris.
17. adiciō.	42. ops.
18. cohortor.	43. paene.
19. redintegrō.	44. ferē.
20. mandō.	45. collis.
21. dēserō.	46. adversus.
22. versor.	47. subsidium.
23. intermittō.	48. cōnfertus.
24. committō.	49. cōnspectus.
25. āmittō.	50. rūsus.

**272.** Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Genitive of quality to denote measure, 22.
2. Dative of agent with passive periphrastic verbs, 95.
3. Passive periphrastic, *oportet, dēbeō*, 95, 111.
4. Cases of the gerund, 91.
5. Clauses after verbs of *urging, ordering, requesting*, 147.
6. Moods with *ubi, ut, postquam*, etc., 152.

273. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 271 and the constructions of 272. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## 274

## CHAPTER XXVII

<i>a.</i> ut proximī iacentibus insisterent.	<i>a.</i> that the next stood upon them as they lay fallen.
<i>b.</i> ut iūdicārī dēbēret.	<i>b.</i> that one must decide.

**A.** 1. Those who were exhausted with wounds leaned on their shields.

2. Let<sup>1</sup> us put ourselves ahead of the cavalry.

3. He stood upon his friend as he lay fallen.

4. They showed such valor that they dared to do very difficult deeds.<sup>2</sup>

5. One must decide that the Nervii were very brave.

**B.** 1. They leaned on their shields to fight men who were armed.

2. The Nervii are so brave that they fight as they lie exhausted with wounds.

3. One must decide that the Gauls dare to do very difficult deeds.<sup>2</sup>

## 275

## CHAPTER XXVIII

<i>a.</i> quī arma ferre possent.	<i>a.</i> capable of bearing arms.
<i>b.</i> finitimis imperāvit ut . . . prohibērent.	<i>b.</i> he ordered their neighbors to refrain.

**A.** 1. The elders think that the vanquished are not safe.

2. There are not many capable<sup>3</sup> of bearing arms.

<sup>1</sup> See 115.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> Review 174.

3. Caesar ordered<sup>1</sup> the Nervii to be protected very carefully.

4. He ordered<sup>2</sup> the vanquished to use their own towns.

B. 1. There were not many elders capable<sup>3</sup> of bearing arms.

2. Caesar ordered<sup>2</sup> the ambassadors to surrender to him.

3. In order to seem to exercise mercy, Caesar orders<sup>1</sup> their neighbors to spare the Nervii.

## 276

## CHAPTER XXIX

a. cum auxiliō Nervii veni-  
rent.

b. cum aliās bellum inferrent  
aliās inlātum dēfenderent.

a. while they were on their way  
to help the Nervii.

b. when at one time they made  
war, at another defended  
themselves when attacked.

A. 1. While we were on our way to help you, the battle was reported.

2. This town is excellently fortified in every direction.

3. The approach had been fortified with rocks of great weight.

4. The Cimbri had marched into Italy.

5. We will defend ourselves when attacked.

B. 1. While we were on our way to help them, it was reported that a battle had been fought.

2. This town, which is excellently fortified, has a steep approach.

3. By fortifying this wall, they defended themselves when attacked.

<sup>1</sup> Use iubeō.

<sup>2</sup> Use imperō.

<sup>3</sup> Review 174.

## 277 CHAPTERS XXX AND XXXI

<i>a.</i> vällō in circuitū XV mī- lium.	<i>a.</i> by a wall fifteen miles in circumference.
<i>b.</i> quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerē- tur.	<i>b.</i> because so large an engine was being set up so far off. (See 173, 1.)
<i>c.</i> trāditis armīs.	<i>c.</i> if their arms were surrendered.

**A.** 1. The fort was six hundred feet in circumference.  
2. The Romans saw that they kept themselves in the town.

3. A tower was set up a great distance off.  
4. The Gauls laughed because the Romans were so small.

5. We will surrender ourselves and all our property to you.

6. Caesar used his customary<sup>1</sup> kindness which the Gauls had heard about.

7. He says that Caesar will use his customary<sup>1</sup> kindness which the Gauls have heard about.

8. If we are deprived of our arms, the enemy will kill our children.

**B.** 1. A tower fifty feet in circumference was set up a great distance off.

2. The Gauls laughed because the Romans expected to move this tower.

3. If the Romans can move such an engine, they have divine help.

4. Quote 3, indirectly after *Galli putābant*.

5. We beg for one favor; do not deprive us of our arms.

6. If our arms are surrendered, what tortures shall we not suffer?

<sup>1</sup> Suus.



## 278

## CHAPTER XXXII

<i>a.</i> finitimis imperātūrum nē quam iniūriam inferrent.	<i>a.</i> that he would order their neighbors not to inflict any injury. (See 72.)
--	--

**A.** 1. If you will not inflict any injury on us, we will surrender.

2. Quote 1 indirectly after *dixerunt*.

3. They threw so many weapons into the ditch that the piles equaled the top of the wall.

4. If<sup>1</sup> the arms are concealed, they will not enjoy peace.

**B.** 1. If you will not inflict any injury on us, we will do what you order.

2. Quote 1 indirectly after *dicunt*.

3. Although many arms were concealed, yet they enjoyed peace.

## 279

## CHAPTER XXXIII

<i>a.</i> concursum est.	<i>a.</i> there was a rush, they ran together.
<i>b.</i> capitum numerus relātus est milium. quinquāgintā trium.	<i>b.</i> the number of souls was reported to be fifty-three thousand.

**A.** 1. Let the townsmen receive no injury from our men.

2. The Gauls believed Caesar would withdraw the garrisons.

3. Had they formed this plan before?

4. There was a rush to fight the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> Avoid the use of *sī*.

5. Although there were many defenders, the gates were broken down.

6. The number of those who were killed was said to be four thousand.

B. 1. Caesar orders the soldiers not to inflict any injury on the Gauls.

2. If this plan was entered upon before, ought<sup>1</sup> the townsmen to have been sold<sup>5</sup>?

3. There was a rush on the part of<sup>2</sup> the Romans to fight the enemy.

4. The number of those who were killed was said to be four thousand.

## 280 CHAPTERS XXXIV AND XXXV

a. utī lēgātī mitterentur quī pollicērentur.	a. that ambassadors were sent to promise.
--	---

A. 1. Crassus informed Caesar that the states along the coast<sup>3</sup> had been pacified.

2. He sent officers to lead the legions into winter quarters.

3. Such a thanksgiving had never been voted up to this time.

4. They promised<sup>4</sup> to return to Caesar.

5. We will do what he orders.

B. 1. Crassus informed Caesar that the states which bordered the ocean had been pacified.

2. He sends officers to lead the legions among the states where the war had been waged.

3. Such a thanksgiving had never been voted up to this time in honor of any one.

<sup>1</sup> Review 112.

<sup>2</sup> "on the part of" — what does this mean?

<sup>3</sup> "along the coast" — use one word. <sup>4</sup> "to return" — acc. and fut. infinitive.

<sup>5</sup> "To have been sold" — vēnīre. The passive of vëndō is supplied by vēnēō.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXVII-XXXV

281. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives :

- |                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. instituō.                        | 26. cōnsilium inire.           |
| 2. insistō.                         | 27. inermis.                   |
| 3. indicō.                          | 28. nēquiquam.                 |
| 4. iaceō.                           | 29. vulnus.                    |
| 5. iaciō.                           | 30. extrēmus.                  |
| 6. cōficiō.                         | 31. iniūria.                   |
| 7. dēleō.                           | 32. cōsēnsus.                  |
| 8. ascendō.                         | 33. cōsentiō.                  |
| 9. agō.                             | 34. iter.                      |
| 10. redigō.                         | 35. pondus.                    |
| 11. praestō, intrans.<br>and trans. | 36. saxum.                     |
| 12. audeō.                          | 37. mānsuētūdō.                |
| 13. dēfendō.                        | 38. clēmentia.                 |
| 14. respondeō.                      | 39. quis, inter. and<br>indef. |
| 15. trādō.                          | 40. condiciō.                  |
| 16. contineō.                       | 41. exiguitās.                 |
| 17. invideō.                        | 42. exiguus.                   |
| 18. cōsuēscō.                       | 43. ēruptiō.                   |
| 19. cōfidō.                         | 44. supplicātiō.               |
| 20. attingō.                        | 45. supplicium.                |
| 21. adaequō.                        | 46. pellis.                    |
| 22. cēlō.                           | 47. vis.                       |
| 23. cadō.                           | 48. praesertim.                |
| 24. accidō.                         | 49. sicut.                     |
| 25. occidō.                         | 50. noctū.                     |

**282.** Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Genitive and ablative of quality, 22, 49.
2. Dative with verbs meaning *command*, *obey*, etc., 32.
3. Verbs used impersonally.
4. Constructions with *iubeō* and *imperō*, 147, 148.
5. Principal statements and subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 160, 166.
6. Uses of *suus*, *sē*, *sibi*, and *ipse*, 65, 69, 74.
7. Relative clauses of result and characteristic, 145. 1, 174.

**283.** The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 281 and the constructions of 282. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## BOOK III

284

### CHAPTER I

1. What reason had<sup>1</sup> Caesar for opening up a road through the Alps?
2. I will permit you, if you think there is need, to<sup>2</sup> winter in this place.
3. Galba was permitted<sup>3</sup> to<sup>2</sup> go among the Alps.
4. There were two parts in the village of Octodurus; one<sup>4</sup> the soldiers occupied, the other Galba fortified.

285

### CHAPTER II

1. The Gauls who had left the village occupied the mountains.
2. They informed Galba that the Gauls who<sup>5</sup> had left the village were occupying the mountains.
3. Will the Romans be able to sustain the Gauls' attack, if<sup>6</sup> many of the soldiers are withdrawn?
4. We are persuaded that the Romans have taken the children away from the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> See 34.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use the infinitive.

<sup>3</sup> See 32, 2.

<sup>4</sup> See 73.

<sup>5</sup> "who . . . village"—is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse ever in the indicative?

<sup>6</sup> Express the condition in some other way than by using *si*.

## 286

## CHAPTER III

1. Sufficient provision for supplies had not been made.
2. Can supplies be brought up when the roads are blocked?
3. Some said, "Let<sup>1</sup> us go back by the same roads by which we came."
4. The majority, however, did not decide to hasten to a place<sup>2</sup> of safety.

## 287

## CHAPTERS IV AND V

1. The signal was given, and the enemy hurled stones on the camp.
2. The Romans will aid that<sup>3</sup> part which is deprived of defenders.
3. Not only not the weary, but not even the wounded, retreated.
4. On<sup>4</sup> account of the failing strength of our men, the situation was critical.
5. He said to Galba, "If we make a sally, there is one hope of safety."
6. Therefore Galba said, "Stop the fight and refresh yourselves."
7. Tell the soldiers to<sup>5</sup> rush out of camp.

## 288

## CHAPTER VI

1. You leave us no<sup>6</sup> opportunity either of learning what is going on or of collecting our wits.

<sup>1</sup> See 115.<sup>2</sup> "a place of" — omit.<sup>3</sup> "that part which" — study the text — *quaecumque pars* . . . cō.<sup>4</sup> "on . . . men," express by a clause.<sup>5</sup> See 147, 148.<sup>6</sup> Combine the negative with "either" and "or."

2. We entertained the hope of surrounding the enemy.
3. Galba came into the Alps with one purpose, but met a different situation.<sup>1</sup>
4. Since the enemy had been defeated, Galba returned to the province.

## 289

## CHAPTERS VII AND VIII.

1. Caesar<sup>2</sup> had every reason to believe that he could start for Illyricum.
2. The cause of the sudden war that broke out near the ocean was as follows:
3. The Veneti kept Caesar's ambassadors with the purpose of getting back their own hostages.
4. All who are in the habit of using the harbors are tributaries of the Veneti.
5. In many respects the Veneti surpassed the Romans.
6. We had rather<sup>3</sup> recover our hostages than put up with the slavery of the Romans.
7. They said to Crassus that they would send back the ambassadors, if he would give up their hostages.

## 290

## CHAPTER IX

1. Crassus informed Caesar of all these matters.
2. After many war vessels had been built, Caesar himself came just as soon as possible.
3. We see what a crime we have been guilty of.
4. Since you have thrown ambassadors into chains, get ready for war.

<sup>1</sup> Use *rēs*.<sup>2</sup> Cf. text — *cum omnibus . . . existimāret*,<sup>3</sup> "we had rather" = *we prefer*.

5. We are confident that nothing will happen contrary to expectation.

6. The Veneti think they know the shallows in those places where they will carry on<sup>1</sup> war.

7. Let us get together as much grain as possible.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I-IX

291. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing principal parts of verbs and declension of nouns and adjectives:

- |                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <b>pertineō.</b>                | 21. <b>instō.</b>            |
| 2. <b>volō.</b>                    | 22. <b>cōnstō.</b>           |
| 3. <b>mālō.</b>                    | 23. <b>colligō.</b>          |
| 4. <b>nōlō.</b>                    | 24. <b>reficō.</b>           |
| 5. <b>permittō.</b>                | 25. <b>potior.</b>           |
| 6. <b>patior.</b>                  | 26. <b>occurrō.</b>          |
| 7. <b>concēdō.</b>                 | 27. <b>adeō.</b>             |
| 8. <b>premō.</b>                   | 28. <b>coōrior.</b>          |
| 9. <b>dētrahō.</b>                 | 29. <b>secundus.</b>         |
| 10. <b>abstrahō.</b>               | 30. <b>castellum.</b>        |
| 11. <b>sustineō.</b>               | 31. <b>undique.</b>          |
| 12. <b>doleō.</b>                  | 32. <b>ubique.</b>           |
| 13. <b>persuādeō.</b>              | 33. <b>vallis.</b>           |
| 14. <b>interclūdō.</b>             | 34. <b>vāllum.</b>           |
| 15. <b>placeō.</b>                 | 35. <b>aliquot.</b>          |
| 16. <b>attribuō.</b>               | 36. <b>cōnsilium capere.</b> |
| 17. <b>antecēdō, with the acc.</b> | 37. <b>singillatim.</b>      |
| 18. <b>discēdō.</b>                | 38. <b>frūstrā.</b>          |
| 19. <b>excēdō.</b>                 | 39. <b>paucitās.</b>         |
| 20. <b>succēdō.</b>                | 40. <b>satis.</b>            |

<sup>1</sup> See 94.



41. <i>hiems.</i>	46. <i>portus.</i>
42. <i>concilium.</i>	47. <i>dēfectiō.</i>
43. <i>cōnsilium.</i>	48. <i>dēficiō.</i>
44. <i>sententia.</i>	49. <i>integer.</i>
45. <i>opiniō.</i>	50. <i>incolumis.</i>

292. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Ablative with *ūtor*, *potior*, etc., 44.
2. The gerundive construction with these verbs.
3. Object clauses with verbs of feeling. Substantive clauses introduced by *quod*.
4. Intransitive verbs used in the passive, 32. 2.
5. *Causā* with genitive of gerund and gerundive, 91, 93, 142. 1, 2.
6. Conditional clauses ; simple supposition of fact, and supposition of something contrary to fact, 121–123.

293. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 291 and the constructions of 292. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

294

## CHAPTERS X AND XI

1. Although there were many difficulties, yet Caesar thought he ought to wage war.
2. If this revolt is overlooked, the Morini will think they may<sup>1</sup> do the same thing.
3. All men ought<sup>2</sup> to hate slavery.
4. He instructed Labienus to go with the cavalry.

<sup>1</sup> Review carefully 117, 119.

<sup>2</sup> See III.

5. Caesar sent Crassus to keep the enemy from<sup>1</sup> uniting.

6. He took care<sup>2</sup> that aid should not be sent from Aquitania.

295

## CHAPTER XII

1. The towns were so situated that there was no access either on foot or by ships.

2. Caesar, therefore, shut off the sea by dikes which<sup>3</sup> he made equal to the walls of the town.

3. They can remove their goods on account of their abundance of ships.

4. The tide ebbs twice every twenty-four hours.

296

## CHAPTER XIII

1. The ships of the Veneti are flat-bottomed, so as more easily to encounter the shoals.

2. Since they were made wholly of oak they could endure any violence.

3. They thought that linen sails would not withstand such severe gales of wind.

4. Their ships can't be harmed with the ram.

5. They were of such great height that weapons could not easily be thrown to them.

6. Our ships had to fear the rocks and shoals.

297

## CHAPTER XIV

1. Caesar decided that he ought not to spend so much labor in vain.

2. It is not clear to me what plan of battle to adopt.

<sup>1</sup> See 150.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. in the text — *qui eam . . . cūret*.

<sup>3</sup> See 174.

3. The enemy cannot be injured with the towers on account of the height of their ships.
4. The poles that were prepared by our men were very useful.
5. Our soldiers surpass the Veneti in valor.
6. No deed of valor escaped notice, because Caesar had a view of the sea.

## 298

## CHAPTERS XV AND XVI

1. The enemy sought safety in flight, when they noticed our men boarding<sup>1</sup> their ships.
2. The calm was so sudden that we could easily finish the business.
3. We will follow up and capture the ships one by one.
4. Let us collect into one place whatever ships we have anywhere.
5. We have no place to retreat<sup>2</sup> to.
6. Caesar decided that they must be sold into slavery.

## 299

## CHAPTER XVII

1. While Caesar was<sup>3</sup> fighting with the Veneti, many states revolted.
2. When the gates are closed, we will unite with them.
3. Every day the enemy offered Sabinus a chance to fight.
4. We will stay in camp, although we are somewhat criticised.
5. Ought Sabinus to fight when Caesar is absent?

<sup>1</sup> Do not use the participle.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. in text — quō sē recipere.

<sup>3</sup> See 102, 2.

## 300

## CHAPTER XVIII

1. He persuaded a certain man to set forth the fear of the Romans.
2. The Gauls did not know when Sabinus would set out from his camp.
3. We ought not to lose an opportunity of going to the camp.
4. We shall not hasten to the camp until<sup>1</sup> we have taken arms.
5. We have collected fagots to fill the ditch with.

## 301

## CHAPTER XIX

1. The Romans rallied and armed themselves in as little time as possible.
2. When the enemy arrived, all out of breath, Sabinus gave his men the signal which they desired.<sup>2</sup>
3. As a result<sup>3</sup> of the bravery of our men, not even one of the enemy escaped.
4. Sabinus informed Caesar of his victory.
5. The Gauls are quick to surrender.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS X-XIX

302. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, learning the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives :

1. dēsum.

2. dēficiō.

3. careō.

4. praesum.

5. nōscō.

6. distribuō.

7. partior.

8. pāreō.

<sup>1</sup> See 156.<sup>2</sup> Cf. in the text — cupientibus signum dat.<sup>3</sup> Cf. in the text — factum est . . . ut . . . ferrent.

9. comparō.	30. polliceor.
10. noceō.	31. pollicitatiō.
11. concidō.	32. ferreus.
12. concidō.	33. similis.
13. cōnsector.	34. alacer.
14. āmittō.	35. ēiusmodi.
15. admittō.	36. admodum.
16. neglegō.	37. clam.
17. licet.	38. facinus.
18. studeō.	39. officium.
19. ōdi (see 106).	40. imprimis.
20. mandō.	41. onus.
21. cūrō.	42. servitūs.
22. trādō.	43. quemadmodum.
23. nāvigatiō.	44. quidam.
24. classis.	45. quidem.
25. facultās.	46. lateō.
26. opportunitās.	47. perferō.
27. occāsiō.	48. adaequō.
28. tempestās.	49. sūmō.
29. fūnis.	50. contumēlia.

303. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Dative with compounds of *sum*, 33.
2. Predicate genitive. (Consult grammar.)
3. Place *where, whence, whither*. (Consult grammar.)
4. Gerundive with *cūrō, trādō*, etc. (Consult grammar.)
5. Constructions with *priusquam* and with *postquam*, 152, 154.
6. Concessive clauses, 171.

304. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 302 and the constructions

of 303. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

305

## CHAPTER XX

1. I see that we must fight in the same place where a Roman army has been defeated.
2. A few years ago Manlius lost his baggage, because<sup>1</sup> he did not use ordinary diligence.
3. The Romans were not very strong in cavalry.
4. Place your infantry in the valley in ambush.

306

## CHAPTER XXI

1. Let us rely on our bravery, and not turn and flee.
2. What can you do when<sup>2</sup> you have no general?
3. We perceived that the Aquitanians were skillful<sup>3</sup> in working mines.
4. They asked Caesar to do this.

307

## CHAPTER XXII

1. We shall enjoy life along with those to whose friendship we have pledged ourselves.
2. If anything happens to you, we shall commit suicide.
3. There is no one who will refuse to die, if<sup>4</sup> his friend is killed.
4. Although<sup>5</sup> he was repulsed, yet he fought bravely.

<sup>1</sup> See 89, 173.<sup>2</sup> "when . . . no" = without.<sup>3</sup> See 24.<sup>4</sup> Do not use si.<sup>5</sup> See 87.

## 308

## CHAPTER XXIII

1. The town was taken a few days after <sup>1</sup> we arrived.
2. Let us ask for help and exchange hostages.
3. Do not think that they have not great skill in Roman customs.
4. We ought not to hesitate <sup>2</sup> to cut the enemy off from supplies.
5. Do you all entertain the same opinion?

## 309

## CHAPTER XXIV

1. Let us wait to see what plan the enemy will adopt.
2. I think it will not be safe to lead <sup>3</sup> out our troops and draw up a double line of battle.
3. We shall attack the Romans while they are re-treating.<sup>3</sup>
4. We must no longer delay encouraging the soldiers.

## 310

## CHAPTER XXV

1. Some hurled weapons, while <sup>4</sup> others provided stones.
2. We do not put much confidence in you.<sup>5</sup>
3. We announced to Crassus that the enemy were fighting fearlessly.

## 311

## CHAPTER XXVI

1. We urged them to show us what was being done.
2. The horsemen are being led around by a longer route, so that the attention of the enemy may not be fixed on them.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. in text — paucis diēbus quibus.    <sup>2</sup> See text and note exception to 136, 1.

<sup>3</sup> Use the participle.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>5</sup> See 32.

<sup>6</sup> Review 65.

3. They demolished the gate before they were seen by the enemy.
4. It is clear that thirty thousand Gauls were killed.

312

## CHAPTER XXVIII

1. They are the only ones left whom<sup>1</sup> Caesar has not conquered.
2. I think that Caesar carries on war in a very different manner from the Morini.
3. When we betook ourselves and all our property into the woods, Caesar could not attack us.
4. We lost a few of our men, because<sup>2</sup> we followed the enemy too far.

313

## CHAPTER XXIX

1. Having<sup>3</sup> cut down the forest, Caesar piled up the material as a rampart.
2. On account of the rains, the soldiers cannot remain longer in their tents.
3. Caesar will burn their villages and lead his army into winter quarters.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XX-XXIX

314. Review thoroughly the meaning of the following words, learning the principal parts of the verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives :

1. aestimō.
2. existimō.
3. intellegō.
4. adorior.

5. committō.
6. ostendō.
7. cupiō.
8. perspicō.

<sup>1</sup> See 174.<sup>2</sup> Review 173.<sup>3</sup> See 85, 89.



9. cōspiciō.	30. finitimus
10. obsideō.	31. nōminātim.
11. reperiō.	32. plūrimum valēre, posse.
12. tollō.	33. frētus.
13. impetrō.	34. sine.
14. imperō.	35. adulēscētulus.
15. interclūdō.	36. imber.
16. augeō.	37. māteria.
17. dēcertō.	38. pecus.
18. arbitror.	39. deinceps.
19. supersum.	40. commodum.
20. dēspērō.	41. cāsus.
21. repellō.	42. causa.
22. dēpellō.	43. adhūc.
23. vetus.	44. quisquam.
24. praeimium.	45. quisque.
25. ultrō.	46. tandem.
26. palūs.	47. tamen.
27. item.	48. adsuētus.
28. lātitudō.	49. peritus.
29. multitudō.	50. cōnstō.

**315.** Review the following principles of syntax:

1. Genitive with adjectives, 24.
2. Ablative of respect, 47.
3. Passive periphrastic and future infinitives, 95, 109.
4. Quō in purpose clauses, 143. 2.
5. Supine to express purpose, 96. 1.
6. Conditions referring to future time, 124, 125.

**316.** The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 314 and the constructions of 315. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## Book IV

317

### CHAPTER I

1. In the consulship of Pompey and Crassus, the Germans came into Gaul on account of their being hard pressed by the Suevi.

2. The Suevi used<sup>1</sup> to lead a thousand armed men from each<sup>2</sup> of the hundred cantons.

3. The former stay at home, while the latter go out to wage war.

4. No one is allowed<sup>3</sup> to own land.

5. Freedom of life makes them men of extraordinary power.

318

### CHAPTER II

1. We had no buyers<sup>4</sup> for what we captured in war.

2. The Germans made their pack horses capable of very great labor.

3. It was considered very disgraceful to use wine.

4. Do not allow yourselves to become weakened.

319

### CHAPTER III

1. They say that their neighbors are unable to withstand the violence of the Suevi.

2. Merchants resort to the Ubii often.

3. Although the Ubii are Germans, yet they are more civilized than the Suevi.

<sup>1</sup> See 103.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. in text — ex quibus . . . singula millia, etc.

<sup>3</sup> See 32, 2.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. in text — quibus vendam.

## 320

## CHAPTER IV

1. The Usipites wandered about in Germany for many years.
2. Having reached the Rhine, the Menapii prevented them from<sup>1</sup> forcing a passage over the river.
3. Scouts informed the Menapii that the Germans had returned home.
4. At last they came back again and seized many ships.
5. They crossed the Rhine before the Menapii were informed of their arrival.

## 321

## CHAPTER V

1. Caesar fears that the Gauls are desirous of a change of government.
2. The Gauls ask travelers, "From what regions have you come?"
3. You will have to repent of the<sup>2</sup> schemes you have entered upon.

## 322

## CHAPTER VI

1. The things we<sup>3</sup> expected would happen have taken place.
2. They invited us to send ambassadors earlier than usual.
3. I think we ought to wage war with the Germans.

## 323

## CHAPTER VII

1. If provoked, we do not refuse to resist our enemies.
2. Write 1 indirectly<sup>4</sup> after *dixerunt*.

<sup>1</sup> See 150.<sup>2</sup> See 71. 5.<sup>3</sup> See 71. 4.<sup>4</sup> Review carefully 165-169.

3. Resist anybody that makes war on you.
4. Write 3 indirectly <sup>1</sup> after dicit.
5. There is nobody that is a match for the immortal gods.

### 324 CHAPTERS VIII AND IX

1. Caesar says that, if you cannot defend your own territory, you cannot hold that <sup>2</sup> belonging to others.
2. You may <sup>3</sup> ask help of the Ubii.
3. Having reported these things to their people, the ambassadors returned to Caesar.
4. They asked Caesar to wait for their cavalry, so as to cause a delay.

### 325 CHAPTER X

1. The Meuse approaches the Rhine not more than eighty miles from the ocean.
2. Those who live on the islands subsist on fish and birds' eggs.

### 326 CHAPTER XI

The Germans did not wish Caesar to advance any farther. Therefore, in order to cause a delay, as Caesar thought, they asked him to give them time to <sup>4</sup> send ambassadors among the Ubii. Caesar said, "I will remain here for one day; but to-morrow assemble here in as large numbers as possible." He said to the prefects who were in charge of the cavalry, "Do not provoke the enemy to an engagement."

<sup>1</sup> Review carefully 165-169.

<sup>3</sup> See 117, 118.

<sup>2</sup> "that . . . others" — one Latin word.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. in text — *ad hās rēs cōficiendās*.

## 327

## CHAPTER XII

The enemy, although our cavalry outnumbered them, made an attack quickly on our men while they had no fear. As was their custom, the Germans leaped to their feet and began to stab our horses underneath. A great many of our men were overthrown, and the rest fled until<sup>1</sup> they came to our van. Among the seventy-four of our men that were killed in this fight was Piso, who was thrown from his horse and killed, while<sup>1</sup> he was rescuing his brother from danger.

## 328

## CHAPTER XIII

After Caesar had learned of this battle, thinking that it was the height of folly to wait until the enemy had time to collect their forces, he decided that he ought not to listen to their ambassadors. Therefore, when a crowd<sup>2</sup> of Germans came to camp on the next morning to excuse themselves for<sup>3</sup> having attacked his cavalry, he thought it a very opportune occurrence,<sup>4</sup> and retained them all. He led all his troops out of camp and decided to give battle.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I-XIII

329. Review the following vocabulary thoroughly, memorizing the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

1. *adsuēfaciō.*2. *cōnsuēscō.*3. *dēsiliō.*4. *tueor.*5. *commūnicō.*6. *trānseō.*<sup>1</sup> Dum, see 156.<sup>2</sup> "a crowd of Germans" = the Germans in crowds.<sup>3</sup> "for having" = because they had.<sup>4</sup> *rēs.*

7. prohibeō.	30. metus.
8. alō.	31. timor.
9. incolō.	32. perfidia.
10. vēndō.	33. humilis.
11. fallō.	34. hiems.
12. adhibeō.	35. quotannis.
13. sustineō.	36. cotidie.
14. revertor.	37. cis.
15. studeō.	38. citra.
16. serviō.	39. sēdēs.
17. occurrō.	40. cōnsidō.
18. resistō.	41. aliquot.
19. attribuo.	42. pār.
20. concēdō.	43. pars.
21. appropinquō.	44. ōrō.
22. antecēdō.	45. petō.
23. interclūdō.	46. quaerō.
24. obtineō.	47. queror.
25. occupō.	48. cōnsilium { inire.
26. offerō.	capere.
27. vis.	49. fingō.
28. vestitus.	50. invitō.
29. vestigium.	

**330.** Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Genitive of possession and genitive of description used in the predicate, 20, 22.
2. Uses of *suus*, *sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, 65, 69.
3. Indirect object used with transitive verbs, with intransitive verbs of special meaning, with compound verbs. How are these verbs used in the passive? 31-33.
4. Indirect statements, commands, questions, 134, 160, 162, 166.

5. Object clauses after verbs of commanding, requesting, urging, etc., 147.

6. Clauses dependent on verbs of swearing and promising.

331. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 329 and the constructions of 330. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## 332

## CHAPTER XIV

Caesar arrived at the Germans' camp before there was time to seize arms. They were so alarmed at his sudden arrival that they were perplexed as<sup>1</sup> to whether it would be better to fly in all directions or to resist the Romans. Those who could seize arms defended the camp, but the rest fled and were overtaken by Caesar's cavalry.

## 333.

## CHAPTER XV

So many of the Germans were being killed that the rest abandoned everything, rushed out of camp, and fled to the Rhine. There some were killed, and others were overpowered by the force of the river. Although Caesar gave to those who had remained in camp the privilege of departing, they wished to remain with him, owing to their fear<sup>2</sup> of the Gauls.

## 334

## CHAPTER XVI

Caesar wished to cross the Rhine, so that the Germans might fear for their own interests and be induced to<sup>3</sup> re-

<sup>1</sup> "as to"—omit.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use a noun.

<sup>3</sup> Do not use the infinitive.

turn home to defend their own territory. Another reason<sup>1</sup> was that the Sugambri would<sup>2</sup> not surrender to Caesar the horsemen who had crossed the Meuse. They said to Caesar, "It is not fair that you should claim any power or authority across the Rhine." The Ubii also were being hard pressed by the Suevi, and were urging Caesar not to<sup>3</sup> be kept from helping them by his state business. They said that even the friendship of Caesar would be very helpful<sup>4</sup> to them, now that the Germans had been defeated.

## 335

## CHAPTER XVII

Therefore Caesar decided that he must cross the Rhine. Although the Ubii promised to give<sup>5</sup> him boats, nevertheless he thought he must build a bridge, since it was not quite safe or consistent with his dignity to carry his army over in ships.

## 336

## CHAPTER XVIII

Ten days after he had decided upon the plan, Caesar led his army across the Rhine. He decided that he must leave a strong garrison at the bridge before he hastened among the Sugambri. These,<sup>6</sup> at the suggestion of their friends, did not send Caesar hostages, but fled into the woods.

## 337

## CHAPTER XIX

While Caesar was<sup>7</sup> waiting among the Sugambri, he burned all their villages and buildings. He then learned

<sup>1</sup> Cf. in text — accessit etiam quod.

<sup>3</sup> Do not use the infinitive.

<sup>5</sup> Use the future infinitive.

<sup>7</sup> See 102, 2.

<sup>2</sup> See 117.

<sup>4</sup> See 37.

<sup>6</sup> Use the relative pronoun, see 71, 6.



from the Ubii, whom he promised to help, that the Suevi had found out about the bridge and had gathered themselves and all their property into one place; and that they would wait there, if Caesar decided to fight. Caesar had crossed the Rhine to frighten the Germans, to punish the Sugambri, and to free the Ubii from their enemies. Therefore<sup>1</sup> when he found that these objects had all been accomplished, he decided to retreat into Gaul.

## 338

## CHAPTER XX

Caesar had noticed that the Britons were very useful to the Gauls in war. Therefore, although<sup>2</sup> a small part of summer remained, he decided that he ought to find out about the kind of people and about the harbors. And so, when he could not<sup>3</sup> find out from the merchants what sort<sup>4</sup> of people they were, or<sup>5</sup> how large the harbors were, he decided to set out for Britain in person.<sup>6</sup>

## 339

## CHAPTER XXI

Volusenus was sent forward with a galley, and was commanded to<sup>6</sup> make a careful investigation. He came back in five days and reported that he had not dared to disembark. In the meantime, while Caesar was collecting ships among the Morini, ambassadors came to him from the island to promise friendship. He urged them to<sup>6</sup> submit to the power of the Romans, and allowed them to<sup>6</sup> return home. He ordered Commius, who was very highly<sup>7</sup> regarded by them, to return to the island with them and to announce his own coming.

<sup>1</sup> quā rē.<sup>2</sup> See 171.<sup>3</sup> neque.<sup>4</sup> "What sort of" — quālis?<sup>5</sup> See 74, 1.<sup>6</sup> See 147.<sup>7</sup> "was . . . regarded," cf. the text — māgnī habēbātur, and see 29.

340

## CHAPTER XXII

The Morini excused themselves for their former deeds on the ground that they were unacquainted with Roman customs. Caesar, therefore, promised to receive them under his protection, and ordered them to give a large number of hostages. He then decided that he ought to start at once with what ships he had, since he feared that the wind in a short time might keep him from <sup>1</sup> sailing.<sup>2</sup>

341

## CHAPTER XXIII

Since the cavalry were boarding their ships too slowly, Caesar started ahead with a few vessels and reached Britain first. When he perceived that the enemy were drawn up on the hills, and could hurl weapons on his men as they disembarked, he decided that he ought to wait until <sup>3</sup> the rest of the ships could help him. In the meantime he gathered his officers together, and showed them how <sup>4</sup> he wished everything carried out.

342

## CHAPTER XXIV

When the barbarians learned what Caesar had decided to do, they sent forward their cavalry and charioteers to keep the Romans from disembarking. The Romans, however, were greatly hindered because they had to fight while <sup>5</sup> standing in deep water, while <sup>5</sup> the enemy could hurl their weapons from dry land.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. in text — *ventō tenēbantur quō minus . . . possent.*

<sup>2</sup> *solvō.*

<sup>3</sup> See 156.

<sup>4</sup> *quem ad modum.*

<sup>5</sup> Which of these two ideas may be expressed by the participle?

## 343

## CHAPTER XXV

Caesar, therefore, in order to dislodge the enemy, stationed the galleys on the exposed flank of the barbarians. They were so alarmed at this maneuver<sup>1</sup> that they halted and began to retreat. The standard bearer<sup>2</sup> of one of the legions then urged his comrades to jump down into the water, if they did not wish to betray the eagle to the barbarians. Hereupon they all jumped from the ships and did their duty to the commonwealth and to their general.

## 344

## CHAPTER XXVI

When the enemy noticed that our men were jumping one<sup>3</sup> from one ship, another from another, and that they could not get a firm footing, they surrounded them one by one, and threw them into great confusion. But as soon as Caesar filled the skiffs with soldiers and sent them to help his men, the enemy fled and the Romans were able to stand on dry land. Caesar could not pursue them on account of the lack<sup>4</sup> of cavalry.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XIV-XXVI

345. Review the following vocabulary thoroughly, memorizing the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

- |             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| 1. irrumpō. | 4. solvō.                 |
| 2. immittō. | 5. agō, several meanings. |
| 3. expōnō.  | 6. praestō.               |

<sup>1</sup> rēs.<sup>2</sup> See 71, 7.<sup>3</sup> Cf. in text, alius aliā ex nāvī.<sup>4</sup> Do not use a noun. Express the whole idea by a clause.

7. opprimō.	29. attingō.
8. pereō.	30. obsidiō.
9. discēdō.	31. litus.
10. distribuō.	32. mōtus.
11. audeō.	33. bini.
12. cōnfidō.	34. exiguitās.
13. intersum.	35. exiguus.
14. dēsum.	36. onerārius.
15. praesum.	37. onus.
16. praefficiō.	38. nāvis longa.
17. nitor.	39. Insuēfactus.
18. prōdō.	40. imperitus.
19. contendō.	41. idōneus.
20. coepl. How is pass. used?	42. adversus, adj. and adv.
21. rescindō.	43. incolumis.
22. succidō.	44. quisquam.
23. incendō.	45. quisque.
24. perspiciō.	46. opiniō.
25. adeō.	47. sententia.
26. ulciscor.	48. ratiō.
27. comperiō.	49. nēquāquam.
28. reperiō.	50. latus.

346. Review the following principles of syntax:

1. Dative with compounds of *sum*.
2. Translations of the ablative absolute.
3. Constructions with *cum* as temporal, causal, and concessive conjunction, 153, 171, 173. 2.
4. Constructions with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, etc., 152.
5. Constructions with *priusquam* and *antequam*, 154.
6. Simple conditions referring to present and past time, and conditions referring to future time in indirect discourse, 126, 169.

347. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 345 and the constructions of 346. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

348

## CHAPTER XXVII

As soon as the battle was over, the Britons came to seek peace. Caesar complained because they had arrested Commius, whom he had sent to them as an envoy, but, at their request,<sup>1</sup> he said he would pardon their action. When Caesar ordered<sup>2</sup> them to give hostages, they replied, "We will give part of them at once, but the rest we shall have to summon from distant places."

349

## CHAPTER XXVIII

Two days after the battle was fought, the ships that had taken the cavalry on board approached Britain, and, just as<sup>3</sup> they were visible from the shore, they were driven back by a storm, some to the place from which they had started and others to the westward. The latter cast anchor, but were filling with water and of necessity made for Gaul.

350

## CHAPTER XXIX

Caesar did not know that the full moon causes very high tides, and so he had drawn up the galleys on the beach, and had anchored the transport ships. The next day he found that the former were filled with water, and that the latter were being dashed about by the storm. All the soldiers, therefore, were greatly alarmed, fearing that they could not return to Gaul, unless the ships were repaired.

<sup>1</sup> Use ablative absolute.

<sup>2</sup> Use *imperō*.

<sup>3</sup> "just as" = *when*.

351

## CHAPTER XXX

When the Britons came to Caesar after the battle, they noticed how contracted the camp was, and perceived the confusion of the Roman army on account of the loss of their ships. They therefore felt confident that, if they should rebel<sup>1</sup> and prolong<sup>1</sup> the matter until winter, they could cut Caesar off from supplies and thus frighten<sup>2</sup> any one from crossing to Britain again.

352

## CHAPTER XXXI

Caesar, suspecting<sup>3</sup> from the fact that the Britons were conferring<sup>4</sup> together that they were about to adopt some new plan, sent some of his men into the fields for grain, and ordered others to repair the ships. The soldiers carried out his plans with such zeal that he was ready for every emergency.

353

## CHAPTER XXXII

While the seventh legion was foraging, with<sup>5</sup> no suspicion of an attack, it was reported to Caesar that those who were on guard had seen a cloud<sup>6</sup> of dust in that direction where the legion had proceeded. Suspecting that the enemy were attacking his men, he left a guard at the camp and went at once to help his soldiers. He found the Romans in confusion, because they had been surrounded while engaged in reaping the grain.

<sup>1</sup> Use ablative absolute.

<sup>2</sup> *dēterreō*.

<sup>3</sup> What tense of the participle? See 84.

<sup>4</sup> "conferring together," cf. *inter sē conlocūtī*, Chapter 30.

<sup>5</sup> "with . . . attack" — use ablative absolute.

<sup>6</sup> Express this idea by an adjective.

## 354

## CHAPTER XXXIII

Caesar saw how the Britons fought from their chariots. They would<sup>1</sup> ride about in all directions and try to frighten the enemy. Then they would station the chariots a little distance from the battle and fight on foot, so that they might retreat to them easily, should there be any need. They accomplished so much by their daily practice that they displayed in battle the speed of cavalry and the steadiness of infantry.

## 355

## CHAPTER XXXIV

Although the Romans recovered from fear at the arrival of help, yet Caesar thought he ought to lead his men back to camp without<sup>2</sup> any loss of time. Meanwhile the storms that followed kept the enemy from attacking Caesar. But, after sending messengers in every direction to tell their people how few soldiers the Romans had, the Britons gathered a large number of troops to attack Caesar's camp.

## 356

## CHAPTERS XXXV AND XXXVI

When Caesar had obtained a few horsemen with which to pursue the enemy, he decided that it was best to draw up a line of battle. Just<sup>3</sup> as Caesar expected, the Britons soon fled, and many of them were killed by the horsemen. At the conclusion of the battle, the Britons sent ambassadors to Caesar to say that they would do whatever he ordered. When the weather was favorable, he set sail and arrived at Gaul safely in a short time.

<sup>1</sup> See 103, 1.

<sup>2</sup> "without . . . time" — use the ablative absolute.

<sup>3</sup> "Just as . . . expected" = as Caesar thought it would be.

357

## CHAPTER XXXVII

Caesar thought that the Morini were subdued, but they attacked about three hundred of his soldiers while they were hurrying into camp, and ordered them to lay down their arms. The Romans refused<sup>1</sup> to do this, and defended themselves for several hours until Caesar sent all the cavalry to help them. Then the Morini fled.

358

## CHAPTER XXXVIII

Caesar sent Labienus to bring the Morini under his power. He did this<sup>2</sup> very easily, because the Morini had no place to<sup>3</sup> use as a refuge. After Titurius and Cotta had laid waste the fields of the Menapii, Caesar led his legions back into winter quarters.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXVII-XXXVIII

359. Review thoroughly the following vocabulary, memorizing the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. affligō.     | 9. accidō.     |
| 2. ēgredior.    | 10. occidō.    |
| 3. dēferō.      | 11. dēligō.    |
| 4. comprehendō. | 12. conloquor. |
| 5. ignōscō.     | 13. prohibeō.  |
| 6. tollō.       | 14. āmittō.    |
| 7. cōōrior.     | 15. ventitō.   |
| 8. compleō.     | 16. laccessō.  |

<sup>1</sup> "refused to do" = they denied that they would do.

<sup>2</sup> Use the relative. What position must it have?

<sup>3</sup> See 174.



17. nanciscor.	34. commodē.
18. nāscor.	35. cōnfertus.
19. cōnsistō.	36. genus.
20. cōstituō.	37. aliēnus.
21. subiciō.	38. tempestās.
22. animadvertō.	39. etsi.
23. complūrēs.	40. tergum.
24. aes.	41. continēns.
25. praeda.	42. nōlō.
26. peditātus.	43. vulnus.
27. orbis.	44. cōspectus.
28. infrā.	45. rebellīō.
29. cōnfestim.	46. ferē.
30. lēnis.	47. abdō.
31. unde.	48. praeceps.
32. inde.	49. plērumque.
33. clam.	50. ēripiō.

360. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Place *where, whence, whither*.
2. Time *when, within which, during which*, 51, 16.
3. Dative of service ; translations of an appositive, 36. 3.
4. Ways of expressing purpose, 142, 143.
5. Active and passive periphrastic, 94, 95.
6. *Cūrō, trādō, dō* with the gerundive.
7. Unreal conditions in indirect discourse, 169. 4, 5.

361. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 359 and the constructions of 360. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

## PART III

### CICERO, FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

NOTE. The student should not depend on the English-Latin vocabulary for the Latin words. The text upon which each chapter is based should be consulted for the necessary words and phrases.

362

#### CHAPTER I

<i>a.</i> quid cōnsili cēperis, quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris?	<i>a.</i> who of us do you think is ignorant of what plan you adopted?
<i>b.</i> tē dūcī iam pridem oportēbat.	<i>b.</i> long ago you ought to have been led.
<i>c.</i> novis rēbus studentem.	<i>c.</i> who desired a revolution.
<i>d.</i> Nōn deēst rei pūblicae cōsilium.	<i>d.</i> the republic does not lack the advice.

1. How long, Catiline, do you think you can baffle us?
2. The senate has been called together in<sup>1</sup> a strongly fortified place.
3. We saw what plans you adopted night before last.
4. Each one of us is marked out for slaughter by Catiline.
5. If we avoid<sup>2</sup> that fellow's weapons, shall we do our duty by the state?
6. Catiline ought to have been killed long ago.
7. Ought we to put up with Catiline when<sup>3</sup> he desires a revolution?

<sup>1</sup> into, why?

<sup>2</sup> See 204.

<sup>3</sup> "when he desires" — use a participle.

8. Do you remember that Publius Scipio, although a private citizen, killed Tiberius Gracchus?

9. There was once such virtue among the consuls that they punished a dangerous citizen most vigorously.

10. We consuls do not lack the authority of the senate.

## 363

## CHAPTER II

<i>a.</i> C. Gracchus, clārrissimō patre.	<i>a.</i> Gaius Gracchus, a man of very famous father.
<i>b.</i> num ūnum diem L. Sātūr- nīnum mors remorāta est?	<i>b.</i> death did not keep Lucius Saturninus waiting for one day, did it?
<i>c.</i> erit verendum mihi.	<i>c.</i> I shall have to fear.
<i>d.</i> nōndum addūcor ut faciam.	<i>d.</i> I am not yet induced to do.
<i>e.</i> cum iam nēmō tam impro- bus inveniri poterit, qui nōn fateātur.	<i>e.</i> when now no one can be found so wicked as not to acknowledge.
<i>f.</i> Quam diū quisquam erit qui audeat.	<i>f.</i> As long as there will be any one who dares.

1. Let the consul see that not a night intervenes.

2. They killed Gaius Gracchus, a man of very distinguished ancestry.

3. Did not<sup>1</sup> the senate decree that the state should be intrusted to the consuls?

4. Gaius Servilius was killed, was he not?<sup>1</sup>

5. We shall not allow Catiline to live; shall<sup>1</sup> we?

6. Since Cicero desired not to seem hasty, he condemned himself for inactivity.

7. If the leader of the enemy is in the city and actually among us, ought he not to be killed?

8. We shall not have to fear that we have acted too cruelly.

<sup>1</sup> Review 78.

9. Yet<sup>1</sup> Cicero was not induced to arrest Catiline.
10. There is no one so like Catiline as to acknowledge that I have acted cruelly.
11. Is there any one who says that I am arbitrary?<sup>2</sup>
12. We shall watch them, although<sup>3</sup> they know it not.

## 364

## CHAPTER III

<i>a.</i> obliviscere caedis atque incendiōrum.	<i>a.</i> forget (cease to think about) murder and fire.
<i>b.</i> licet recōgnōscās.	<i>b.</i> you may review.
<i>c.</i> ante diem XII Kalendās Novembrīs.	<i>c.</i> the twelfth day before the Kalends of November ( <i>i.e.</i> October 21).
<i>d.</i> nihil cōgitās, quod nōn ego audiam.	<i>d.</i> you plan nothing that I do not hear of.

1. Is there anything that a private house can contain within its walls?<sup>4</sup>

2. You may believe my words.

3. Cease to think about that purpose of yours.

4. Don't you see that not only the deed but also the very day did not escape me?

5. On the 29th<sup>5</sup> of October many left Rome to avoid your wicked companions.

6. You don't forget, do you, that you were surrounded so that you could not move against the state?

7. You are content with the slaughter of the rest of us who remain.

8. I am confident that you will kill those who remain.

9. You do nothing that is not reported to me at once.

10. On the 24th<sup>5</sup> of October Manlius was in arms.

<sup>1</sup> *vērūm*.

<sup>2</sup> *dissolūtus*.

<sup>3</sup> See 87, 6.

<sup>4</sup> What is the difference in meaning between *pariēs*, *moenia*, and *mūrus*?

<sup>5</sup> See H. 754-756 (641-645); L.M. 1169-1171; A. 376; G. Appendix; B. 371, 372

## 365

## CHAPTER IV

<i>a.</i> Hōs ego dē rē pūblicā sententiam rogō.	<i>a.</i> I call upon them to vote on public matters.
<i>b.</i> dixistī paulum tibi esse etiam nunc morae quod ego vīverem.	<i>b.</i> you said you were even now delayed a little because I lived.
<i>c.</i> Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē istā cūrā liberārent.	<i>c.</i> Two Roman knights were found to free you from that care.
<i>d.</i> sēsē interfectūrōs esse pollicērentur.	<i>d.</i> promised to kill.
<i>e.</i> salūtātum.	<i>e.</i> in order to pay their respects.

1. Cicero used<sup>1</sup> to keep a sharp lookout for the safety of the state.

2. You don't deny, do you, that you were at Marcus Laeca's house?

3. If you had denied it, I would have proven it.

4. We have right<sup>2</sup> here in this senate men who are your companions in crime.

5. I ought not to call upon such men to vote.

6. I have not arrested these men, because<sup>3</sup> I wish you to lead them out with you.

7. You were delayed a little, because<sup>3</sup> I fortified my house.

8. You sent men to kill me at my house.

9. Romans used<sup>1</sup> to go to the house of the consul to pay their respects.

10. You promised to free us from the conspirators.

<sup>1</sup> See 103.

<sup>2</sup> This word merely emphasizes "here." How should it be expressed in Latin?

<sup>3</sup> See 173.

## 366

## CHAPTER V

<i>a.</i> Quae cum ita sint.	<i>a.</i> Since this is so, (therefore).
<i>b.</i> dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit.	<i>b.</i> if only (provided) a wall intervene between you and me.
<i>c.</i> nullō tumultū concitātō.	<i>c.</i> without arousing any con- fusion.
<i>d.</i> quod hūius imperi proprium est.	<i>d.</i> which belongs to this power of mine.
<i>e.</i> mē imperante.	<i>e.</i> at my command.

1. Since your companions long for you, leave the city.  
2. I shall be relieved of great fear, provided you take  
out with you as many of your friends as you can.

3. A wall ought to intervene between you<sup>1</sup> and me.

4. We should thank Jupiter for<sup>2</sup> having saved the  
city.

5. As long as Cicero could defend himself by personal  
watchfulness, he did not employ a public guard.

6. You cannot become consul without killing all your  
rivals.

7. I shall oppose Catiline, although he dooms<sup>3</sup> me to  
destruction.

8. Although this belongs to my power, I have not yet  
dared to kill Catiline.

9. If the consul should order you to leave the city, you  
would not hesitate to go, would you, Catiline?

10. Will you go at the consul's advice?

11. I have long been urging<sup>4</sup> you to do this without my  
command.

<sup>1</sup> "you and me." Note the order of these words in the next.

<sup>2</sup> "for having saved" = because he has saved.

<sup>3</sup> vocō.

<sup>4</sup> See 147.

## 367

## CHAPTER VI

<i>a.</i> nēmō est quī tē nōn ōderit.	<i>a.</i> there is no one who does not hate you.
<i>b.</i> ita coniectās ut vitārī posse nōn vidērentur.	<i>b.</i> so aimed that they seemed impossible to be avoided.
<i>c.</i> Quotiēns tibi iam extorta est ista sīca dē manibus !	<i>c.</i> How often already has that dagger been wrested from your hands !
<i>d.</i> quod eam necesse putās esse dēfigere.	<i>d.</i> that you think that you must plunge it, etc.

1. What patriotic citizen does not hate Catiline ?
2. What disgraceful act is there that does not cling to your reputation ?
3. There was nobody who did not fear Catiline.
4. Have you not offered to many<sup>1</sup> a young man swords for their reckless daring ?
5. I will, however, pass this all by.
6. Would<sup>2</sup> that such a crime had not been unpunished.
7. Who doesn't know that you came into the comitium for the sake of killing the consuls ?
8. On the 29th of December it was the good luck of the Roman people that opposed your purpose.
9. It seemed impossible<sup>3</sup> for you to kill the consul.
10. When<sup>4</sup> I was consul-elect, I wrested that dagger from your<sup>5</sup> hands.
11. Do you think that you must kill the consul ?

<sup>1</sup> "Many a young man" = many young men.

<sup>2</sup> There is no adjective in Latin for "impossible."

<sup>5</sup> Do not use tuus. See 36.

<sup>2</sup> See 123, 129.

<sup>4</sup> See 3.

368

## • CHAPTER VII

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><i>a.</i> Quid, quod ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt?</p> <p><i>b.</i> Sī tē parentēs timērent atque ōdisset tuī aliquō concēderēs.</p> <p><i>c.</i> mē esse . . . nōn est ferendum.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> What of the fact that those seats near you were vacated?</p> <p><i>b.</i> If your parents feared and hated you, you would retire somewhere.</p> <p><i>c.</i> it is not to be endured that I should be, etc.</p> |
|--|--|

1. Ought Cicero to have been moved by hatred or pity?
2. Did you not see the seats vacated as soon as you came into the senate?
3. What of the fact that this has happened to nobody since<sup>1</sup> the founding of the city?
4. Do you not think you ought to leave the city?
5. If<sup>2</sup> my fellow-citizens should hate me, I would not wish to be seen by them.
6. If you knew what the citizens think of you, you would avoid their sight.
7. If Catiline had feared his country's authority, he would have followed her decree.
8. Your country has long been of the opinion that you would not hesitate to overthrow her laws.
9. In your<sup>3</sup> case alone crime has existed unpunished for many years.
10. It is not to be endured that we should always fear you.
11. If you leave the city, we shall sometime at length cease fearing.
12. You would have gone long ago, had you regarded<sup>4</sup> the feelings of your countrymen.

<sup>1</sup> "since the founding of the city" = after the city having been founded.

<sup>2</sup> Review 121-125.

<sup>3</sup> "In your case" — use dative of reference.

<sup>4</sup> sequor.



## 369

## CHAPTER VIII •

<i>a.</i> ad M'. Lepidum.	<i>a.</i> at the house of Manius Lepidus.
<i>b.</i> ut tē adservārem rogāstī.	<i>b.</i> you asked me to keep you.
<i>c.</i> faciam ut intellegās.	<i>c.</i> I will make you understand.
<i>d.</i> eōsdem facile addūcam ut tē prōsequantur.	<i>d.</i> I will easily induce these same persons to escort you.

1. Cicero said to Catiline that, if the country should speak with him, as he had said, she ought to gain her request.

2. To avoid suspicion, Catiline asked Lepidus to keep him at his house.

3. If I am in great danger because city walls do not intervene between you and me, certainly we cannot live within the same house walls.

4. If you are worthy<sup>1</sup> of guardianship, ought you to be out of prison?

5. Cicero asked why, if he could not die with resignation, he hesitated to leave Rome.

6. Cicero will make Catiline leave the city of his own accord.

7. Catiline said he would go into exile, if the senate should vote that to be its pleasure.

8. Then Cicero said the senators expressed their approval by their silence.<sup>2</sup>

9. Do you think that the senate would<sup>3</sup> have kept silent, had Cicero said the same thing to a patriotic citizen?

10. The senators could overhear the applause of the Roman knights who stood around the senate in crowds.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See 47, 2.

<sup>2</sup> "by their silence" — use a participle.

<sup>3</sup> Review 169.

<sup>4</sup> "in crowds" — use the adjective formed from frequentia.

11. Cicero said he would induce the citizens to escort Catiline to the gates as he left Rome.

## 370

## CHAPTER IX

a. Utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs duint (dent).	a. Would that the immortal gods would give you that purpose.
b. Sed est tantī.	b. But it is worth while.
c. ut lēgum poenās pertimēs- cās nōn est postulandum.	c. it is not to be expected that you should fear the pun- ishment of the laws (cf. Ch. VII, c).

1. O<sup>1</sup> that Catiline would reform!
2. Would that you had been frightened<sup>2</sup> at my words, and gone<sup>2</sup> into exile!
3. It is worth while for me to endure the storm of unpopularity.
4. It was not to be expected that fear should ever recall Catiline from danger.
5. For he was not the man to fear anything.
6. Provided<sup>3</sup> you separate yourself from loyal citizens, leave the city.
7. If you should go straight into exile, I would not be able to endure the unpopularity.
8. Catiline will not wage war upon his country until<sup>3</sup> he betakes himself to Manlius.
9. I feel sure that you will go to the camp of Manlius, because you have sent the eagle ahead.
10. Don't remain in Rome any longer, for how<sup>4</sup> can you get along without your friends?

<sup>1</sup> Review 128, 129.<sup>2</sup> Do not use two coördinate verbs.<sup>3</sup> Review 172.<sup>4</sup> Cf. ut . . . possis in the text.

## 371

## CHAPTER X

*a.* Habēs ubi ostentēs.

*a.* You have an opportunity to show (literally you have where you may show).

1. On the 8th<sup>1</sup> of November Cicero had an opportunity to show that power<sup>2</sup> of speech for which nature had trained him.

2. He told the senate that Catiline had got<sup>3</sup> together a band of ruffians who were bereft of all hope.

3. With what pleasure did Cicero rejoice when he saw none but loyal citizens in Rome!

4. Catiline had many an opportunity to plot against peaceful citizens.

5. But he will never have an opportunity of assailing the republic as a consul.

6. I wish you to leave the city, so that your conspiracy may be called robbery rather than warfare.

7. Although you have wonderful endurance, yet you will soon be exhausted by cold and hunger.

## 372

## CHAPTER XI

*a.* Praeclāram refert grātiā  
(cf. habēre grātiā and  
agere grātiās).

*a.* You show a noble gratitude.

*b.* si quis est metus.

*b.* if there is any fear.

1. Senators, I urge you to hear what the country says to Catiline.

2. Don't you think that his country ought to be dearer to him than his very life?

<sup>1</sup> See 364, 5 and note.

<sup>2</sup> "power of speech" = dicendi facultās.

<sup>3</sup> Review 165, 166.

3. Many thought that Cicero was not sending Catiline out of the city, but letting him loose against the city.

4. Cicero told the senators not<sup>1</sup> to fear the laws about Roman citizens.

5. For he said that those who had revolted from the republic were not citizens.

6. If Cicero had any<sup>2</sup> fear of unpopularity, he would not show gratitude to his country.

7. Do you think that Cicero ought to neglect the safety of his countrymen, seeing that they had raised him at a very early age to the consulship?

8. Cicero dreaded the reproach of inactivity no less than that of severity.

## 373

## CHAPTER XII

*a.* quī hōc idem sentiunt.

*b.* optimum factū.

*c.* Hōc ūnō interfectō.

*d.* sī in hunc animadvertissem.

*a.* who hold the same views.

*b.* the best thing to do.

*c.* if this one man is killed.

*d.* if I had punished him.

1. It is the best thing to do to make a brief reply to those who hold the same views.

2. If you all had held the same views as<sup>3</sup> I do,<sup>4</sup> Catiline would not have lived for one hour.

3. We ought not to fear that we shall disgrace ourselves by killing<sup>5</sup> Catiline.

4. And yet there are some senators who help Catiline by not believing that there is any conspiracy.

5. If I should punish him, they would blame me.

6. If Catiline was killed, will any one be foolish<sup>6</sup> enough to think that the conspiracy has been blotted out.

<sup>1</sup> "not to fear," see 162.

<sup>2</sup> See 72.

<sup>3</sup> quī.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>5</sup> Use participle.

<sup>6</sup> "foolish enough" = so foolish as to, etc.

7. Catiline must lead out all his companions in order to destroy the root and seed of all evil.

8. I wish he would do this!

## 374

## CHAPTER XIII

*a.* nesciō quō pactō.

*b.* Quā rē sēcēdant improbi.

*a.* somehow or other (literally, by some means).

*b.* Therefore let the rascals depart.

1. Somehow or other, senators, let us be rid of this danger.

2. Don't let the danger remain in the vitals of the republic.

3. If Catiline is removed, we shall not be entirely relieved, if<sup>1</sup> his companions are left at Rome.

4. If they cannot cease plotting against us, I recommend that they be separated from loyal men.

5. They hold such views about the republic that they ought not to live with us any longer.

6. But if Catiline will only depart, I promise you that everything will be brought to light and punished.

7. Then, imploring<sup>2</sup> Jupiter to defend the republic from all danger, Cicero finished his speech and sat down.

<sup>1</sup> Do not use a *sī* clause.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use a participle.

## SECOND ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

375

### CHAPTER I

1. At last, fellow-citizens, Catiline has left of his own accord, threatening us all with destruction.

2. The danger has been unquestionably removed from the forum and senate house, for he must now wage war openly.

3. He was almost overwhelmed with grief, because<sup>1</sup> I was alive and the citizens safe.

4. He would<sup>2</sup> like to have left with the consuls dead and the city burned.

5. I have no doubt that he often laments the fact<sup>3</sup> that the city is standing.

6. She, however, is glad because<sup>1</sup> that fellow has burst forth.

7. Don't you think we all ought to thank the gods for our good fortune?

376

### CHAPTER II

1. Who is there who would blame Cicero for not having arrested Catiline?

2. How many did not credit the facts<sup>4</sup> that Cicero laid before the senate?

<sup>1</sup> Should the indicative or subjunctive be used with quod? See 173.

<sup>2</sup> See 118, 127.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

3. If I had put Catiline to death, as I ought to have<sup>1</sup> done, many would have accused me severely.

4. And yet I would have done this, had I thought that his removal<sup>2</sup> would save the state.

5. Now that he is gone, we can fight the enemy openly.

6. Cicero was vexed that Catiline left his followers at Rome.

7. We may judge how valiant they are.

8. I wish we could fight them all as easily as we can Catiline.

## 377.

## CHAPTER III

1. The army which Catiline had with him was greatly to be despised in comparison with Roman soldiers.

2. If I had shown them<sup>3</sup> the praetor's edict, they would have taken to their heels.

3. Cicero did not think that those who remained in the city were greatly to be feared.

4. The consul knew to whom each district had been assigned.

5. Is it not strange that they are not alarmed, seeing<sup>4</sup> that I know all their plans?

6. Bear in mind that I will not always be lenient.

## 378

## CHAPTER IV

1. I have made<sup>5</sup> you all see that Catiline, and men like him, have formed a conspiracy against the state.

2. If they will all leave, I will show them the road by which Catiline set out.

<sup>1</sup> "to have done" — omit.

<sup>2</sup> "his removal" — express in some other way than by a noun.

<sup>3</sup> Use relative. What should its position be?

<sup>4</sup> Do not use the participle.

<sup>5</sup> See 369, c.

3. What crime is there that they can devise, now that he has left?

4. For there was no assassin, no scoundrel, no robber, who did not live on most intimate terms with Catiline.

5. I suppose<sup>1</sup> nobody ever had as much power<sup>2</sup> over young men as he had.

6. All who were heavily in debt were united with him in crime.

## 379

## CHAPTER V

1. I want you all to realize that Catiline was intimate with all who are fickle and worthless.

2. Who can endure that such men should boast that Catiline is a brave man, when he thinks of nothing but assassination and robbery?

3. Oh, how fortunate we would be, had they all gone along with Catiline!

4. If they merely wasted their property and ran<sup>3</sup> into debt, we could<sup>4</sup> put up with them.

5. But do you think that we ought to allow them to plot against the property of loyal men?

6. If I felt sure that some fate were approaching them,<sup>5</sup> I would think that I had added many years to the republic.

7. Fellow-citizens, we have conquered all our foreign enemies, therefore we ought not to hesitate to struggle with these domestic perils.

8. I will be your leader, and I warn those rascals to look out for the doom that hangs over them.

<sup>1</sup> crēdō.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use a noun; express the idea by a verb.

<sup>3</sup> "ran into debt" = became overwhelmed with debt.

<sup>4</sup> See 123, 1.

<sup>5</sup> See 33.



## 380

## CHAPTER VI

1. I did not drive Catiline into exile, for he is not such a modest man as to be unable to bear the voice of the consul.

2. I will tell you, fellow-citizens, what happened in the senate yesterday.

3. When Catiline had the effrontery<sup>1</sup> to be present, the chief men of that body would not sit in the same seats with him.

4. I asked him who of us he thought did not know what he had been doing during the past<sup>2</sup> few days.

5. I showed him that I knew all the details<sup>3</sup> of the war.

6. If we know that you have made all preparations, why do you hesitate to go where your standard has been sent?

7. Do you believe that Manlius is waging war on his own account?

## 381

## CHAPTER VII

1. I wonder whether or not Cicero really desired Catiline to wage war against his country.

2. For if he should give up the plan of making war and go into exile, there would be persons who would say that he had been driven out by violent<sup>4</sup> threats.

3. And yet Cicero said it was worth his while to undergo a storm of unpopularity, provided he be rid of Catiline.

4. What would these fault-finders<sup>5</sup> say, if Catiline should march upon Rome with an army?

5. And yet I think he is more likely<sup>6</sup> to do this than to go alone into exile.

<sup>1</sup> "had the effrontery" — use a verb.

<sup>2</sup> ante.

<sup>3</sup> "all the details" — one Latin word.

<sup>4</sup> "violent threats" = violence and threats.

<sup>5</sup> Use a relative clause.

<sup>6</sup> See 94.

6. Don't complain because some say that Catiline has gone to Massilia.

7. I would rather have him go there than join Manlius.

## 382

## CHAPTER VIII

1. Cicero thought he ought to say a few words about those who remained at Rome, rather than about one who acknowledged he was an enemy.

2. I will show you how these can be brought to their senses.

3. One class of these consists of men whose appearance is very respectable, for they have great possessions.

4. If I were rich, I would not hesitate to pay my debts with the income of my estate.

5. You are mistaken, if you think you will get new accounts from Catiline.

6. If we can induce<sup>1</sup> them to give up some of their property to pay their debts, we will find them better citizens.

7. I don't think these rich men are likely to bear arms against the state.

## 383

## CHAPTER IX

1. Cicero said that, if the republic were undisturbed, the second class would be unable to secure the offices.

2. I give these exactly<sup>2</sup> the same advice as the others, not to attempt to secure the mastery of Rome.

3. Let them understand that the gods are going to help us in person, and that there is great harmony among all the citizens.

<sup>1</sup> See 363.

<sup>2</sup> "exactly the same as" = one and the same which.

4. But if they gain their heart's<sup>1</sup> desire, will they not have to yield the offices to some other person?

5. The colonists as a whole are excellent men, but there are some who make an extravagant display of their wealth.

6. They would not have fallen into such heavy debt, had Sulla been alive to help them.

7. Everybody remembers Sulla's proscriptions with such grief that I don't believe that even these colonists would now be likely to endure such robbery.

## 384

## CHAPTER X

1. The fourth class consists of those who are so heavily in debt that they are all hurrying to Catiline's camp to extricate themselves from debt.

2. If these men should perish one and all, I do not think their next-door neighbors<sup>2</sup> would notice it.

3. I ask you, fellow-citizens, whether you think it more disgraceful to perish alone than with the multitude.

4. If the prison is not large enough<sup>3</sup> to hold these criminals, is it not a good thing to have them go to that camp?

5. Let all assassins and criminals who belong peculiarly to Catiline join with him, so that their zeal may be spent on the toils of camp.

6. I wonder how these poor wretches will learn how to get along without Catiline.

## 385

## CHAPTER XI

1. Cicero thought that the war need not be feared, if the Roman generals only lead the flower and strength of their troops against Catiline.

<sup>1</sup> "heart's desire" — express the idea by a relative clause.

<sup>2</sup> What does this expression really mean?

<sup>3</sup> "large enough to hold" = sufficiently large so as to hold.

2. For an outcast and broken-down band of criminals cannot be a match<sup>1</sup> for all of Italy.

3. If he did not lack everything that we are supplied with, still honor and bravery could not contend with baseness and cowardice.

4. Honesty and treachery cannot contend together<sup>2</sup> without the immortal gods compelling virtue to conquer vice.

## 386

## CHAPTER XII

1. I have informed you, fellow-citizens, about this conspiracy, and I will also provide a sufficient guard for your safety.

2. I have found out that the gladiators are better disposed than we thought they would be.

3. We have sent Metellus ahead to check<sup>3</sup> all of Catiline's attempts.

4. Those whom Catiline has left at Rome should be warned again and again that the consuls are watchful.

5. As for the future,<sup>4</sup> don't forget that we must live together.

6. Since the senate is brave and we have a prison, I warn these to keep quiet or leave.

## 387

## CHAPTER XIII

1. It is hardly to be expected that this war can be settled without the death of some one.

2. Yet I will so manage affairs as a civilian that every loyal man will be safe.

<sup>1</sup> "be a match for" = respondeō.

<sup>3</sup> "to check" — express in three different ways.

<sup>2</sup> See 68.

<sup>4</sup> = what is left.

3. Cicero thought that the gods, who had defended Rome from many an enemy, would now defend the citizens from these perils.

4. If you rely upon the leadership<sup>1</sup> of the gods, I promise you that all will be safe.

5. We should<sup>2</sup> all implore the gods to overcome these wicked domestic enemies.

<sup>1</sup> "leadership of the gods" = the gods as leaders.

<sup>2</sup> Does this mean that "we ought to"?

## THIRD ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

388

### CHAPTER I

Cicero told the Romans that he had saved their wives, children, and property by his labors. He said that he deserved to be held in no less honor with his countrymen than the man who had founded the city. "For," said he, "is it not a greater task<sup>1</sup> to save our city after it has grown than it was to found it many years ago? Now listen to me diligently as I tell<sup>2</sup> you how all the details of Catiline's conspiracy have been brought to light."

389

### CHAPTER II

Ever since<sup>3</sup> Catiline was driven out of the city and was compelled to leave at Rome his companions in crime, I have been anxious to know what they did and how they spent their days and nights. I thought my oration would gain greater credence in your ears, if I could only make you see the danger with your own eyes. At last an opportunity that I had long been desiring was offered to me. Some ambassadors from Gaul had been tampered with by Lentulus, so as to aid his cause by stirring up a rebellion in Gaul. These ambassadors had on<sup>4</sup> their persons letters that they had been asked to give to Catiline. Therefore I

<sup>1</sup> "a greater task" = of greater labor.

<sup>2</sup> Use a participle.

<sup>3</sup> "Ever since" = ut.

<sup>4</sup> "on their persons" = apud se.

sent some patriotic men to the Mulvian bridge, which the Gauls had to cross, to arrest the ambassadors and deliver the letters to me.

## 390

## CHAPTER III

After the battle was over, all the letters were handed over to the officers, while<sup>1</sup> the men were arrested and brought to Rome. Many prominent men, who were at Cicero's house, were of the opinion that the consul ought to open the letters before they were laid before the senate. Cicero, however, said<sup>2</sup> he would not report the affair to the senate, unless the seals were unbroken, for he thought that too much carefulness could not be employed. Meanwhile the praetor, who had been ordered to bring whatever weapons there were at the house of Cethegus, returned with a large number.

## 391

## CHAPTER IV

Volturcius, on being urged to tell what he knew, said that the conspirators were about to set fire to the city and assassinate as many of the citizens as possible, that letters had been sent to Catiline urging<sup>3</sup> him to<sup>4</sup> come to their aid as soon as possible. The Gauls said that they would<sup>5</sup> have united their cavalry with the infantry of the conspirators. Lentulus thought he was the one who was about to become king after this year, and he had a quarrel with Cethegus as to the time of burning the city.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> "said he would not" = denied that he would.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

<sup>4</sup> Do not use the infinitive.

<sup>5</sup> Is a condition implied?

## 392

## CHAPTER V

To be brief, all the conspirators, at the production<sup>1</sup> of the letters, identified the seals and handwriting, and they were so conscience-stricken that they either became silent or confessed. I asked Lentulus if he didn't think that the memory of his grandfather ought<sup>2</sup> to have recalled him from his madness. When he was given<sup>3</sup> an opportunity to say a few words about the Gauls, although nobody surpassed him in impudence, he did not deny that he had spoken to the Gauls about the rule and control of the republic. The letter from Lentulus to Catiline said that Catiline would know who he was from the person he had sent to him, and it urged him to secure as much help as possible. Finally, citizens, all these things were such sure proofs of crime that they did not have to be betrayed by their comrades.

## 393

## CHAPTER VI

After the evidence had all been set forth, the senate thanked Cicero for arresting<sup>4</sup> the conspirators and exposing their plans; also Flaccus and Pomptinus because the consuls had found them such brave assistants. Then the senators voted to deliver into custody Lentulus, Cethegus, and the others who had evidently<sup>5</sup> been engaged in the conspiracy. A thanksgiving has often been voted to others for glorious deeds, but never before to anybody for saving the republic. Scruples had prevented Marius from<sup>6</sup> punishing the praetor Glaucia, therefore Lentulus was compelled to resign his office, so that he might be punished as a private citizen.

<sup>1</sup> Do not use a noun.<sup>2</sup> See III.<sup>3</sup> Ablative absolute.<sup>4</sup> See 173.<sup>5</sup> Express this idea by a verb.<sup>6</sup> Cf. in text *religiō* . . . *quō* minus.



## 394

## CHAPTER VII

When Catiline had been driven from the city, Cicero supposed he would not have to fear the rest, who were not so dangerous. For Catiline was very shrewd and watchful, and he was not a man who thought a deed was done when he had given the order. There was no cold or hunger that he could not endure. He was so keen and bold that we could<sup>1</sup> have removed this great danger from you only<sup>1</sup> with the greatest difficulty. If he had been in the city, he would not have allowed the letters to have been written, and we then would have been compelled<sup>2</sup> to catch the rascals in some other way.

## 395

## CHAPTER VIII

Cicero accomplished so much during his consulship that the management could not have belonged<sup>3</sup> to human wisdom. Not<sup>4</sup> to speak of the earthquakes and the other wonderful things, you all surely remember that not long ago the statue of Romulus, the founder of this city, was struck by lightning and thrown down. The soothsayers predicted that the whole city would be destroyed, unless the Fates could be turned. And so, to propitiate the gods, the Romans instituted ten days' games, and the consuls contracted for the erection of a larger statue of Jupiter, and ordered it to be placed on high ground facing the east. Is it not remarkable, fellow-citizens, that this statue was not erected until yesterday, the time when this conspiracy was found out?

<sup>1</sup> "could . . . only with" = could not . . . except by.

<sup>2</sup> Express the idea of necessity by the second periphrastic conjugation.

<sup>3</sup> "have belonged to" = have been of.      <sup>4</sup> See text of Ch. V, first words.

## 396

## CHAPTER IX

Nobody can deny that, if the gods had not controlled everything, the conspirators would not have been led to the senate house on the very day that the statue of Jupiter was turned toward the forum. Who, therefore, is so bereft of reason as to deny that the gods are worthy of all honor for saving us from slaughter and fire? Certainly Lentulus would not have been foolish enough<sup>1</sup> to intrust such important business to barbarians, had not the gods wished this beautiful city to be safe. What was it, unless the favor of the gods, that prevented our old enemies, the Gauls, from<sup>2</sup> overcoming us by merely saying nothing?

## 397

## CHAPTER X

Therefore, fellow-citizens, I urge you to celebrate those games which the senate has decreed, for never before have civilians been victorious with a civilian for their general. If you should compare this conspiracy with the civil dissensions of Marius and Sulla, which doubtless you yourselves remember, you would recall that they wished merely<sup>3</sup> to change the government, not to destroy it. One<sup>4</sup> ought not to speak about<sup>5</sup> the extent of the slaughter of the citizens without feeling grateful to the gods that we are now all safe and sound. Don't forget that, although Catiline wished to burn as much of the city and kill as many of us as he could, I have so managed affairs that not a patriotic citizen should perish.

<sup>1</sup> "foolish enough to intrust" = so foolish that he intrusted.

<sup>2</sup> See 150.

<sup>3</sup> Modo, postpositive.

<sup>4</sup> "One ought not to speak" = it ought not to be said.

<sup>5</sup> "about . . . citizens" — express by a clause.

## 398

## CHAPTER XI

In return for the preservation of the state, fellow-citizens, I ask for no mute memorial of praise, but that you all remember that it was I who disclosed this conspiracy. There are many less worthy men who can acquire triumphs and monuments. It will be enough glory for me that you remember that, of the two prominent citizens of this time, one enlarged<sup>1</sup> the state while<sup>2</sup> the other saved it.

## 399

## CHAPTER XII

Foreign victors<sup>3</sup> are better<sup>4</sup> off than I am, because I cannot kill my enemies, but must remain in Rome with them. It is, therefore, the duty of the Roman people to see that nobody harms me, for if you allow me to be annoyed, others will not be likely<sup>5</sup> to expose themselves to danger to protect you. As for me, I have enough glory, and there is no higher step to which I care to ascend. I desire to so conduct myself that you will not think that it was by chance that I saved the republic. Therefore, fellow-citizens, now that it is night, you ought to pray<sup>6</sup> to yonder Jupiter, and then go home to defend the city.

<sup>1</sup> amplificō.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> "Foreign victors"—express by a relative clause.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. in text the first sentence of this chapter.

<sup>5</sup> See 94.

<sup>6</sup> Use the participle.

## FOURTH ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

400

### CHAPTER I

After the senate had been called together to see what disposition<sup>1</sup> should be made of the conspirators, all turned their eyes toward Cicero as he was about to express his opinion.<sup>1</sup> He urged them to forget his safety and plan only for the highest<sup>2</sup> interests of the state. He said he would endure every hardship, provided he could free his countrymen from danger. "You know, senators," said he, "that I have never been free from danger either in the senate house or at my own home, where I ought to enjoy quiet; and yet I would endure whatever fate awaits me, should I be able to rescue these buildings from foul destruction. I am pleased to think that my consulship has been almost destined for the safety of the republic."

401

### CHAPTER II

I beg of you, senators, look out for yourselves. Don't spare me, for if I were not ready to die with composure, I would be a wretch and unworthy of my office. And yet I am not the man to disregard<sup>3</sup> the feelings of my wife, daughter, and son, whom you see standing around. If I

<sup>1</sup> Avoid the use of the noun.

<sup>2</sup> "for the . . . state" = *dē summā rē pūblicā*.

<sup>3</sup> *neglegō*.

am moved by these things, it is only that they may not perish along with me. These men whom we have brought to trial are not like ordinary criminals, for they have formed a plan of so destroying the republic that nobody shall be left who does not hold the same views<sup>1</sup> as they do.

## 402

## CHAPTER III

Cicero said that the senate had already passed judgment on the facts of the case,<sup>2</sup> because yesterday they had voted to thank him, reward the Gauls, and commit the prisoners to jail; but he said that they must now vote as to the punishment, although they would doubtless convict them. He said that it was the consul's duty<sup>3</sup> to state that a greater conspiracy than they imagined was brewing,<sup>4</sup> and was spreading over Italy and even in Gaul; and that if they thought it could be checked by procrastination, they would soon see that they were greatly mistaken. He therefore urged the senate to punish the criminals quickly.

## 403

## CHAPTER IV

There are two views as to the punishment, one of which you ought to adopt.<sup>5</sup> Silanus is of the opinion that men who did not wish us to enjoy this fair city or even our lives ought to be killed: he calls our attention to the fact<sup>6</sup> that prisoners less dangerous than these have often been punished by death. Caesar, on the other hand, holds<sup>7</sup> that

<sup>1</sup> "hold the same views," see I, Ch. XII, a.

<sup>2</sup> "consul's duty" = of the consul.

<sup>3</sup> sequor.

<sup>4</sup> Not teneō. What does this really mean in this connection?

<sup>5</sup> "of the case" — omit.

<sup>6</sup> Passive of misceō.

<sup>7</sup> May this be omitted?

death is not a suitable punishment for wicked citizens. He urges that their property be confiscated, that they be put under guard for life among the municipal towns, and that nobody be allowed to lighten their punishment. If you decide upon this punishment, I have no doubt that I can find towns that will be willing to guard them. And yet, don't you think it would be better to take away their lives rather than to leave no hope to console them in their misery ?

## 404

## CHAPTER V

Cicero realized that it was for his own <sup>1</sup> personal <sup>2</sup> interest that the senators should follow Caesar's view, who he said was truly devoted to the people. He was inclined <sup>3</sup> to think that his enemies would say he had acted contrary to the Sempronian law, if he should put these citizens to death. Cicero, however, argued that by forming a conspiracy they had become public enemies, and were no longer citizens. When Caesar did not hesitate to express his opinion about the guilt and punishment of the prisoners, Cicero said there was a great difference between him and the other democrats who were absent to avoid <sup>4</sup> voting on the life of a Roman citizen. Nobody had any reason to <sup>5</sup> doubt Caesar's loyalty <sup>6</sup> to his country.

## 405

## CHAPTER VI

If, therefore, you adopt <sup>7</sup> the proposal of Silanus, I shall easily free myself from the charge of cruelty. Now may

<sup>1</sup> See 28.<sup>2</sup> ipsius.<sup>3</sup> Cf. nesciō an in the text.<sup>4</sup> Express this idea in some other way than by a verb.<sup>5</sup> Wherefore he should doubt.<sup>6</sup> voluntās.<sup>7</sup> What tense should this be ?

I be allowed to show you, senators, that the most severe punishment in such a case as this is not cruelty. When I seem to see these buildings falling in ruins and the citizens unburied, when Lentulus and Cethegus appear before my eyes in full power,<sup>1</sup> exulting at the wailing of the women, I think I should be most cruel if I did not punish them very severely. Let me ask you whether you would not punish a slave most vigorously, if you knew he had killed your wife and children. Had I been lenient in such a case, you would say that I was most cruel toward my family. There are men in times of party strife who would receive severe wounds to prevent<sup>2</sup> the highest interests of the state from suffering any loss. Therefore you ought not to fear that you will pass too severe a measure against these men who had assigned to one the overthrow<sup>3</sup> of the republic, to another the slaughter of all the citizens.

If you vote to put these men to death, there are some who fear that you will not be able to carry out your plans. I would<sup>4</sup> like to say, however, that I shall have enough help, since almost all the citizens hold the same views as we do. The knights and senators, through their desire to hold imperial power, and by the common peril, have been restored to harmony. What danger can come to the state, or who will not thoroughly enjoy the possession of liberty, if this<sup>5</sup> harmony shall last forever?

<sup>1</sup> Use participle.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. in text *nē* quid *dēminuerētur*.

<sup>3</sup> "the overthrow of the republic" = the republic to be overthrown.

<sup>4</sup> Potential subjunctive.

<sup>5</sup> Use the relative, and put this clause first.

## 407

## CHAPTER VIII

If the freedmen are patriotic,<sup>1</sup> don't you think that men who were born in a high station ought to wish to see this city stand? Even the slaves have been aroused to the defence of the fatherland, and are contributing all they can to your support. Don't be alarmed because rumor<sup>2</sup> says that Lentulus has been trying to tamper with the destitute, for he could not find any who were willing to join the conspiracy. The shopkeepers also know that their profits will not be maintained, if their shops are burned. Therefore, senators, do not fear that the people will fail you.

## 408

## CHAPTER IX

Cicero, seeing that he had been rescued from the jaws of death, wished to perform his duty as a consul. He reminded the senate that the fatherland was beset by dangers and intrusted itself to them, that they had a leader who would not forget them, and that all the classes of citizens were unanimous<sup>3</sup> as to what ought to be done. "Don't allow to be destroyed," said he, "the empire that has been founded with such toil. You must come to a decision at once about the punishment of these prisoners, so that others will never again dare to plot against the welfare<sup>4</sup> of this nation."

## 409

## CHAPTER X

Cicero had now incurred as many enemies as there were persons implicated<sup>5</sup> in the conspiracy, and yet he said he

<sup>1</sup> = loving of country.      <sup>2</sup> "rumor says" — what does this really mean?

<sup>3</sup> Avoid the use of an adjective.

<sup>4</sup> = highest interests.

<sup>5</sup> versò.



would never repent of what he had done, provided the patriotic citizens proved more powerful than the conspirators. Grant that Scipio put an end to the Punic war, that Paulus conquered King Perses, that Marius saved the Romans from the dominion of the Gauls, still I think it is a greater deed<sup>1</sup> to furnish these victors a country to which to return. Cicero would now have to wage a continual war with his enemies, but he was safe, because there was no power strong enough to overthrow the unanimity of loyal men.

## 410

## CHAPTER XI

As long as the memory of my deeds is<sup>2</sup> fixed in your mind, I shall be free from all danger. I ask you for nothing except that you see that my son has sufficient protection, and that you keep in mind that he is the son of the man who saved this fair city of yours. I have given up a province in order to secure evidence against these prisoners, but I do it gladly, provided you guard diligently the liberty and safety of the citizens. You have a consul who is not afraid to obey your orders, therefore it is your duty to decide what you think should be done.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.<sup>2</sup> What time does this refer to?

## POMPEY'S MILITARY COMMAND

### 411

### CHAPTER I

Having<sup>1</sup> spent his early years in the defense of his friends, Cicero decided not to speak from the rostra until he had something<sup>2</sup> to say that was worthy of a place from which all the best men had spoken. He felt that, inasmuch as his fellow-citizens had elected him praetor, he ought to employ what influence and skill in speaking he had<sup>3</sup> in behalf of those who had judged so well of him. He was particularly glad that he was allowed to speak of Pompey, about whom it would not be difficult to find something<sup>2</sup> to say.

### 412

### CHAPTER II

The situation<sup>4</sup> is as follows: two kings, Mithridates and Tigranes, thinking<sup>5</sup> they can get Asia, are bringing war on your allies. The letters brought to me from the Roman knights who manage your revenues show that many villages of your province are being burned by the enemy, that the war is being badly managed by the successor<sup>6</sup> of Lucullus, and that all your allies are asking for a commander who will make the enemy fear him. In view of the fact, therefore, that the glory of the Roman people,

<sup>1</sup> See 85, 2.

<sup>2</sup> "something to say" = what he might say. See 174.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. in the text — in mē est.

<sup>4</sup> causa.

<sup>5</sup> Do not use the participle.

<sup>6</sup> See 71, 7.

the safety of your friends, and your largest revenues are at stake, it seems to me that you ought to follow up this war with the greatest zeal.

## 413

## CHAPTER III

Cicero said that it<sup>1</sup> was a deep stain on the name of the Roman people that they allowed Mithridates, a man who had killed so many thousands of the citizens of Rome, to still remain on his throne without having received a punishment worthy of such a crime. Sulla and Murena have each triumphed over<sup>2</sup> Mithridates, yet after his defeats he still rules. But we must not censure these commanders whom the public interests recalled from the seat<sup>3</sup> of war to Rome.

## 414

## CHAPTER IV

Mithridates was so covetous of glory that he could not forget his ambitions,<sup>4</sup> so he made great preparations to contest the<sup>5</sup> supremacy with us both by land and sea, and by sending<sup>6</sup> dispatches to Sertorius planned to attack us while we were waging war in Spain. But, thanks<sup>7</sup> to the remarkable valor of Pompey and Lucullus, the danger was averted in both quarters. Praise should not be taken from the latter on account of these recent mishaps,<sup>4</sup> which may be assigned not to his fault but to his fortune.

<sup>1</sup> "it was . . . stain" = a stain was deeply seated.

<sup>2</sup> dē.

<sup>3</sup> Do not use sēdēs.

<sup>4</sup> See 71, 7.

<sup>5</sup> = concerning the.

<sup>6</sup> Use participle.

<sup>7</sup> What does this expression really mean?

## 415

## CHAPTER V

If your ancestors many years ago destroyed the beautiful city of Corinth, because<sup>1</sup> their ambassadors had been wrongfully treated, do you think you ought to disregard the cruel<sup>2</sup> murder of a Roman envoy, the massacre of your citizens, and the loss of your revenues? What, pray, ought your feelings to be when you remember that the safety of your friends and allies is being brought into great danger, and that two powerful kings are threatening the whole of Asia? These allies of yours are worthy<sup>3</sup> of being protected carefully, and the more so because the other commanders whom you have sent to them have pillaged their towns. Therefore they would be very glad<sup>4</sup> to know that you are going to send to defend them Gnaeus Pompey, a man of such kindness and self-control.

## 416

## CHAPTER VI

Your ancestors, fellow-citizens, were so careful to guard the interests<sup>5</sup> of their allies that they often went to war on their account, even when they themselves had suffered no injury. Therefore it behooves you to protect a province that is such a help to you through its large revenues. There is no land so rich as Asia, or that surpasses it in exports.<sup>6</sup> You all know, of course, that no taxes can be gathered when agriculture and commerce have been interrupted on account of the approach of the enemy. Therefore, if you would<sup>7</sup> enjoy the income of a province, you must protect the taxpayer<sup>6</sup> and the tax-

<sup>1</sup> See 87, 3; 89.

<sup>2</sup> "the cruel . . . envoy" = a Roman envoy having been cruelly murdered.

<sup>3</sup> See 174, 1.

<sup>4</sup> "very glad to know" = know very gladly.

<sup>5</sup> *rēs*.

<sup>6</sup> See 71, 7.

<sup>7</sup> See 117.

gatherer not only from disaster, but from the fear of disaster.

## 417

## CHAPTER VII

There are other reasons why<sup>1</sup> you must prosecute this war with the greatest vigor. You cannot neglect those respectable men who have invested capital in gathering your taxes without<sup>2</sup> diminishing your revenues and bringing disaster upon Rome; for if payment should be hindered in Asia, credit would fall at Rome. There are many other active and energetic men who are doing business in Asia, and<sup>3</sup> if you do not consider their<sup>4</sup> interests, it will be difficult to persuade others to invest their money in our provinces. Furthermore, all parts of the empire are so united together that we must bear in mind that it is the part of wisdom to look after the financial interests of our allies as we would our own interests.

## 418

## CHAPTER VIII

Recall with me very briefly, fellow-citizens, what Lucullus did when he was sent to conduct the war against Mithridates eight years ago. He freed from danger a city of the Cyzicenes, which Mithridates was besieging with a large, well-equipped army; he sank a large fleet that was being sent against Italy; he captured many great cities of Pontus and Cappadocia, and compelled the great king, stripped of his dominions, to flee as a suppliant to other kings. In view of these facts there is nobody who can say that I do not accord to Lucullus as much credit as is due the great deeds that he has performed.

<sup>1</sup> quā rē.<sup>2</sup> = that not = ut nōn.<sup>3</sup> See 71, 6.<sup>4</sup> Omit.

## 419

## CHAPTER IX

Perhaps it may seem strange to some that a great war still exists, if Lucullus won so many victories. These are the reasons. When<sup>1</sup> Mithridates was fleeing from his kingdom, he left a large quantity of gold and silver to check the speed of his pursuers. If our soldiers had not delayed to gather this<sup>2</sup> up, he would not have escaped from their hands. Furthermore, when Mithridates arrived among the Armenians, their king, Tigranes, promised to<sup>3</sup> help him; likewise many other nations began to fear that our army was likely to plunder their temples, so they joined with Mithridates in his desire to get rid of the Romans. Our soldiers, too, became weary of the long marches, and begged their general to return as soon as possible. All this made it possible for Mithridates not only to return to his own country, but also to enlist the support of other kings, and gather a large army with which he was able to inflict a severe defeat on Lucullus. At this time Lucullus was ordered to hand his army over to Glabrio, and the war, now<sup>4</sup> that it has been renewed with such vigor, has become very dangerous.

## 420

## CHAPTER X

Now that we must select a man competent<sup>5</sup> to take charge of such a perilous war, the choice will not be a difficult one, since we have a general whom all acknowledge to be most skillful<sup>6</sup> in military affairs. Fresh<sup>7</sup> from school

<sup>1</sup> Do not use a temporal clause.

<sup>2</sup> Use a relative. What position should it have?

<sup>3</sup> Future infinitive.

<sup>4</sup> "now . . . renewed" — use a participle.

<sup>5</sup> See 174, 1.

<sup>6</sup> See 24.

<sup>7</sup> What does this word really mean?

he was trained in military discipline in his father's army. When a mere youth he was in charge of an army of his own. His varied experience on land and sea has made him acquainted with all kinds of warfare. He has gained more victories and celebrated more triumphs than any other general of ancient<sup>1</sup> or modern times. In view of all these facts, is there any doubt that he is the one man who can bring this war to a close?

## 421

## CHAPTER XI

There is no man who can show that Pompey does not possess all the virtues of a commander to a greater degree than any one whom we have seen or heard. Cicero said that many powerful enemies, not only abroad but also in Italy, bore<sup>2</sup> witness to this effect: that Gaul, Spain, and Africa had been freed from danger by his bravery, diligence, and wise<sup>3</sup> counsel; that Pompey had cleared the sea of pirates in one year, although they had such firm control of every harbor and bay that none of the revenues were safe; that the Romans could not defend their allies; and that even Roman merchants could not set sail except in winter.

## 422

## CHAPTER XII

In olden times it was the special<sup>4</sup> province of the Roman people to protect the interests of their allies, and not to guard their own domains; but during the war with the pirates, not only ambassadors from foreign nations were captured, but our own merchants were not safe, and even

<sup>1</sup> "of ancient . . . times" = of those who now are or were in ancient times.

<sup>2</sup> "bore witness" = were witnesses.

<sup>3</sup> "wise counsel" = one word.

<sup>4</sup> "special province" = proprius.

our children were seized while Roman officers were present. Such was the situation when the Romans very wisely appointed Pompey to take charge of the war with the pirates. If they had appointed a less skillful general, doubtless you would now behold the enemy's ships in the Tiber. Pompey, however, undertook the war with the same zeal that one would employ in the pursuit of gain. Even before the sea was fit for navigation, he sent out ships in all directions to defend the allies of Rome; and then, after defeating<sup>1</sup> the pirates in many engagements, he brought the long and widely scattered war to a close in the middle of the summer. Would not such a general be likely to follow up Mithridates with the greatest zeal, wisdom, and bravery?

## 423

## CHAPTER XIII

But bravery and zeal are not the only qualities that we should look for in a perfect commander. He ought also to be a man of the greatest integrity, self-control, and kindness. Without<sup>2</sup> mentioning any names, Cicero said that there were commanders who sold offices and drew money from the public treasury to use for their own affairs, that the Romans could easily understand what took place abroad from<sup>3</sup> their recollection of how some generals had marched through Italy. Then, after a comparison<sup>4</sup> with other generals, he made the Romans understand that Pompey was a general of great self-control and kindness, and that he never allowed his army to harm a people which<sup>5</sup> had once<sup>6</sup> been subdued.

<sup>1</sup> See 89, 1.<sup>2</sup> Use ablative absolute.<sup>3</sup> "from their recollection of" = when they recollected.<sup>4</sup> Avoid the use of the noun.<sup>5</sup> Do not use a relative clause.<sup>6</sup> Omit.



## 424

## CHAPTER XIV

Pompey could finish this war very quickly because no lust called him aside to pleasure, and because he did not allow his soldiers to remove the statues and paintings from the Greek cities. Our allies had heard that our ancestors were men of great self-restraint; but our commanders, by<sup>1</sup> taking everything that they could lay their hands on, made them think that they had been falsely informed. It is not surprising,<sup>2</sup> therefore, that the allies thought that Pompey was like the old Romans. Furthermore, he was so approachable that even the humblest man dared to speak to him about his troubles. In view of these facts, citizens, ought we to hesitate to put in charge of this war a man who is endowed by nature with so many fine qualities?

## 425

## CHAPTER XV

You were not ignorant, fellow-citizens, that the opinion<sup>3</sup> the allies have of our generals is a powerful<sup>4</sup> factor in carrying on a war; therefore you very wisely demanded for that war Pompey, a general whose reputation alone was almost strong enough to bring the enemy to terms. One can easily show what an influence he holds. Why did grain suddenly become cheaper than in times of great crops, after he had been put in charge of the naval war? And, to cite another example of his ability, when our army had suffered a severe reverse, when Mithridates was flushed with victory, and when many enemies were threatening our

<sup>1</sup> "by taking everything" — ablative absolute.

<sup>2</sup> to be wondered at.

<sup>3</sup> Avoid the use of a corresponding noun in Latin.

<sup>4</sup> "powerful factor" — do not use the corresponding words in Latin. Express the idea in another way.

allies, there is no doubt that you would have lost all of Asia, had Pompey not arrived at the nick of time. Do you think that the Mithridatic war would now be so dangerous, if <sup>1</sup> Pompey had been put in charge of it before?

## 426

## CHAPTER XVI

The fact that ambassadors from the Cretans came to Pompey when he was in far-distant lands, and asserted that they preferred to surrender to him rather than to any other Roman commander, shows how great is his influence among our enemies. Why, is there any doubt that Mithridates would not long resist our interests in Asia, if Pompey were commander there, when he sent an ambassador to Spain to Pompey personally,<sup>2</sup> when<sup>3</sup> he was only an ambassador there? I think I ought at this point to say a few words about his good fortune, for we all realize that good fortune is as<sup>4</sup> important in completing great undertakings as bravery and other qualifications. He has managed affairs at home and in his campaigns with such success that not only the enemy, but even the elements,<sup>5</sup> have obeyed his will, as<sup>6</sup> it were. The common safety, therefore, demands that you confer the management of this war upon Pompey.

## 427

## CHAPTER XVII

In addition to these advantages that I have enumerated, the fact that Pompey is already on the ground with an army is another reason why<sup>7</sup> he should be selected for this

<sup>1</sup> Review 169, 4 and 5.

<sup>2</sup> See 74, 1.

<sup>3</sup> "when . . . there" — do not use a temporal clause.

<sup>4</sup> "is as important" = is of as much.

<sup>5</sup> elements = winds and tempests.

<sup>6</sup> "as it were" — use *videor* in its proper relation to the preceding clause.

<sup>7</sup> *quā rē*

war. And yet there are patriotic men, whose influence is very powerful, who, while they acknowledge that Pompey possesses in the highest degree all the qualities of a general, think that it is not consistent<sup>1</sup> with the highest interests of the state to bestow so much power upon one individual. Facts, however, speak<sup>2</sup> louder than words. These same gentlemen used the same argument when we were about to select a general to put an end to the naval war. If their opinion had prevailed at that time, do you think we would now possess such a vast empire?

## 428

## CHAPTER XVIII

There were many states smaller than ours which were powerful enough to<sup>3</sup> defend their own coasts, and yet the Roman people, who possessed such possibilities<sup>4</sup> in naval affairs before the Gabinian law was passed, were deprived of the use of their harbors and coasts through bad management. Although our ancestors overcame King Perses and laid low the powerful fleets of the Carthaginians, we were not a match for the pirates. Don't you think our officers ought to have been ashamed to oppose the selection of Pompey from that very rostra which had been adorned by the spoils gained by our great generals?

## 429

## CHAPTER XIX

We must all acknowledge that Hortensius and others spoke with good intentions against Pompey, and yet I have no doubt that they are now ashamed of their words, when

<sup>1</sup> See 37.      <sup>2</sup> "speak louder" — what does this expression really mean?

<sup>3</sup> Do not use the infinitive.      <sup>4</sup> Avoid the use of a corresponding noun in Latin.

they see that Pompey has accomplished<sup>1</sup> the defeat of the pirates in one year. But is it not still more unworthy of these gentlemen that they oppose<sup>2</sup> the appointment of Gabinius as a lieutenant, especially when Pompey requests it? If Gabinius got Pompey put in command of the naval war, should he not have a share in the glory of that commander? At any rate, if the consuls do not bring before the senate the question of his appointment, nothing but the veto of the praetor will prevent me from<sup>3</sup> doing so.

## 430

## CHAPTER XX

Catulus, however, argues<sup>4</sup> that if we should stake everything upon Pompey, and anything should happen to him, there would be nobody on whom we could rely. Although Catulus is a man of great influence, and one who is very serviceable to the state, yet I differ with him very strongly, feeling,<sup>5</sup> as I do,<sup>6</sup> that we should enjoy the services of our great men while they live. When he urges us to follow<sup>7</sup> the examples of our ancestors, he forgets that we have often in our history placed all our hope on a single individual; in fact, if it were necessary, I could mention many great men who have been put at the head of affairs at critical points.

## 431

## CHAPTER XXI

But, to<sup>8</sup> speak further about the ability of Pompey, did you ever hear of a private citizen and a mere youth gaining a brilliant victory under his own command? He did<sup>9</sup> it.

<sup>1</sup> "accomplished the . . . pirates" — cf. in text effecit ut . . . vidēremur.

<sup>2</sup> "oppose the appointment" — cf. in text obtrētātum esse . . . nē lēgārētur.

<sup>3</sup> See 150.

<sup>4</sup> dicō.

<sup>5</sup> Do not use the participle.

<sup>6</sup> "as I do" — is this essential to the thought of the clause? May it be omitted?

<sup>7</sup> pārēō.

<sup>8</sup> Do not use the infinitive.

<sup>9</sup> Do not use faciō. See 81, 1.

What is so unusual as to intrust the duty of two consuls to a young man? Afterward, although it was not customary to give an army to a man that had not held office, the management of affairs in Africa was intrusted to him, and he soon brought<sup>1</sup> home a victorious army; and, after being exempt from the law, was allowed to celebrate a triumph, though<sup>2</sup> only a knight. I mention all this<sup>3</sup> that Catulus may see that many new precedents have been established in the case of Pompey.

## 432

## CHAPTER XXII

If the outcome<sup>4</sup> of events shows that Hortensius and Catulus did not act right in trying to prevent us from putting Pompey in charge of the naval war, let us see that their opinions do not prevail now. If<sup>5</sup> their judgment on public affairs and the ability of Pompey had been better then, we would be able to put more confidence in them now. As I have said before, Pompey has such self-control, as well as bravery, that it is difficult to say whether our allies hate more the avaricious generals that have been sent to them than the enemy fear Pompey. Hortensius and Catulus know how our allies have been pillaged, therefore I cannot understand how they can consider<sup>6</sup> the best interests of our friends and oppose the appointment of Pompey to the leadership.

<sup>1</sup> Avoid the use of so many coördinate verbs.

<sup>2</sup> Omit "though only." The emphasis on "knight" may be shown in Latin by its position.

<sup>3</sup> Use the relative. What position?

<sup>4</sup> "outcome of events" = things themselves.

<sup>5</sup> "if their judgment on . . . had been better" = if they had judged more wisely concerning.

<sup>6</sup> Use the participle.

## 433

## CHAPTER XXIII

Therefore, since the generals who have been sent against Mithridates have accomplished nothing except<sup>1</sup> to enrich themselves by plundering the property of our allies and the shrines of their temples, it is high time, citizens, that we cease to think of ourselves only, and that we send to Asia a man capable<sup>2</sup> of looking after the interests of our allies as well as of defeating the enemy. Pompey is a man who is fit to accomplish all this.<sup>3</sup> He is not a commander who will think more of becoming rich than of pursuing the enemy, and the fact that our allies will be glad to have him come among them is a proof of this. I have said a great deal about the men who object to this law; but don't forget that there are very many men, who are noted<sup>4</sup> for their deeds on land and sea, who feel that you should intrust Pompey with this great authority without delay.

## 434

## CHAPTER XXIV

Cicero had now shown the Romans that the war was very important and inevitable,<sup>5</sup> and that they had only one general capable of bringing it to an end. He then told Manlius that he would devote whatever talent and influence he had to passing<sup>6</sup> the law, and he urged him not to be frightened from his opinions by anybody. There were some people who felt that Cicero spoke in behalf of the Manilian law to gain the favor of Pompey, who was the leading man in the state at that time; but should we not believe that Cicero was sufficiently patriotic<sup>7</sup> to do this for the highest interests of the state, and not for his own benefit?

<sup>1</sup> "except to" = nisi ut.<sup>2</sup> See 174, 1.<sup>3</sup> Use the relative.<sup>4</sup> existō.<sup>5</sup> necessārius.<sup>6</sup> cōstituō.<sup>7</sup> Cf. the text, Ch. XVII, line 10.

## THE CITIZENSHIP OF ARCHIAS

435

### CHAPTER I

Aulus Licinius had a right to claim the advantage of whatever talent Cicero possessed. For Cicero said that as far back as he could remember Licinius had been his teacher in the liberal arts, and therefore nobody ought to be surprised that he wished to help him; for, although he did not have<sup>1</sup> the same kind of ability as<sup>2</sup> Licinius, poets and orators were bound together by a certain common bond of relationship.

436

### CHAPTER II

The case was being tried before a praetor who was a most excellent man, and in the presence of a large crowd. Therefore Cicero urged the judges not to think it strange that he should not use the ordinary<sup>3</sup> court language, but should prefer to adopt a style of speech that is more adapted to the defendant. "I beg of you," said he, "to allow me to speak rather freely about the study of literature. If you should do this, I certainly think I could persuade you to enroll this man as a citizen, even if he were not one."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "he did have" = in sē fuit.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. in text inūsitatō.

<sup>2</sup> quae.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

## 437

## CHAPTER III

In his youth Aulus Licinius was trained in the arts, and having devoted himself to writing soon excelled everybody in the city of Corinth.<sup>1</sup> He became so famous for his Greek learning that he was deemed worthy of the acquaintance and hospitality of many learned men both in Italy and in Greece. When in Italy he was presented with citizenship by many Greek cities, which shows that there were some who had ability to estimate genius. On coming to Rome he became acquainted<sup>2</sup> with many prominent men, who not only treated him with the greatest respect, but even admitted him into their homes. Although still a young man, his acquaintance was cultivated by almost everybody on account of his genius, learning, and native worth.

## 438

## CHAPTER IV

On leaving Rome in company with Lucullus he arrived at Heraciia, a state that enjoyed most favorable treaty rights. Then, deeming<sup>3</sup> himself worthy of the citizenship, he got himself enrolled on the ground that he had lived at Rome a long time. Afterward a certain Grattius claimed that he was not a Roman citizen, because he could not prove by the records that he had been enrolled as a citizen either at Rome or some allied city. Now don't you think it was absurd that Grattius should demand the records, which all knew had been burned, and pay no attention<sup>4</sup> to the oaths of respectable men who saw Licinius present himself before the praetor?

<sup>1</sup> Not genitive.

<sup>2</sup> "became acquainted with" = cōgnōscō.

<sup>3</sup> Do not use the participle.

<sup>4</sup> "pay no attention to" = repudiō.



## 439

## CHAPTER V

The records neither of Appius nor Gabinius were carefully kept, but Metellus, by whom Licinius was enrolled, was so careful and conscientious that he used to be worried by the erasure of a single name. Furthermore, if the Greek cities were in the habit of giving the citizenship to actors and men of ordinary ability, do you think they would have rejected Licinius, a man of such great genius? Yet Grattius asks for the census, in spite of the fact that he knew Archias was not<sup>1</sup> at Rome either<sup>1</sup> at the last census or<sup>1</sup> the one before that. In view<sup>2</sup> of all these arguments who can doubt that Aulus Licinius is a Roman citizen?

## 440

## CHAPTER VI

Cicero was greatly pleased with Licinius, because he supplied him with something<sup>3</sup> to refresh his mind with after a day's labor, and with the material<sup>4</sup> for his speeches on a great variety of business. Cicero said that anybody ought to be ashamed so to devote himself to literature that he could not help his friends or contribute to the good of his fellow-countrymen. "For my part,<sup>5</sup>" said he, "I am not ashamed to confess that I devote as much time to these studies as others spend on pleasure and recreation. Unless the teachings of this man and the examples derived from Greek literature had convinced me that fame and integrity should be considered of paramount<sup>6</sup> worth, I would not have been willing to expose myself to such dangers for your safety."

<sup>1</sup> "not . . . either . . . or" = neither . . . nor.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. in the text, *Quae cum ita sint*.

<sup>3</sup> "something with" = whereby = *ubi*.

<sup>4</sup> Avoid the use of a noun.

<sup>5</sup> "For my part" — this merely emphasizes the pronoun *I*.

<sup>6</sup> What does this word mean?

## 441

## CHAPTER VII

Some one may ask why some of our great generals have not been trained in literature. My reply is that there have been men of such great natural endowments that, even without systematic<sup>1</sup> training, they have shown<sup>2</sup> themselves to be wise, dignified, and brave. How much greater would such men have been, had they added the benefits of learning to their excellent natural abilities! Such were Scipio Africanus, Cato the elder, and others, men who knew that these studies were of great value to them in attaining virtue. Learning is confined<sup>3</sup> neither to time, age, nor place, therefore I think we should all seek these studies for the pleasure they give us, even if no direct<sup>4</sup> benefit can be shown.

## 442

## CHAPTER VIII

Roscius, who died recently at an advanced age, was a man of such grace that he won the admiration of all of us by the mere movements of his body; do you think, then, that we ought to neglect Archias, who is noted for the speed and agility of his intellect? Why,<sup>5</sup> I have seen him recite on the spur of the moment, without<sup>6</sup> writing a single word, excellent poetry on current<sup>7</sup> events. Let us look upon the poets as men of divine inspiration. If they could make the rocks move, and the wild beasts stop their course, certainly we who have been trained in all<sup>8</sup> that is good ought to be moved by their songs.

<sup>1</sup> "systematic training" = *ratio ac disciplina*.

<sup>2</sup> "have shown themselves" = *existō*.

<sup>3</sup> "is confined to" = *is of*.

<sup>4</sup> = real, true.

<sup>5</sup> *Quid?*

<sup>6</sup> Express the idea of this clause by a temporal clause.

<sup>7</sup> Express by a relative clause; see 71, 7.

<sup>8</sup> "all that is good" = all the best things.

## 443

## CHAPTER IX

If many nations claimed Homer as their citizen even after his death, certainly we should not reject this poet while he is living, one who has devoted much of his time to the celebration of Roman wars and victories. We like<sup>1</sup> to hear those who speak in our praise. This man has written about the Mithridatic war, about our achievements<sup>2</sup> in the Pontus under the command of Lucullus, and about the rescue<sup>3</sup> of Cyzicus from the destruction of war. Certainly, then, it would not be to our credit not to accept as a citizen a man whose writings have adorned not only our generals, but also the whole Roman people.

## 444

## CHAPTER X

Do not think it is a disadvantage<sup>4</sup> to us, judges, that Archias uses the Greek language, for I would call your attention to the fact that Greek is read far more widely than Latin, and that, therefore, if<sup>5</sup> this man is the herald of our glory, our deeds will penetrate to the uttermost parts of the earth. The greatest generals have always bestowed especial honor upon poets and writers, for the greater a man is the more he is influenced by the desire for glory. Who would have heard of Achilles, had he not had Homer to proclaim his deeds? When Sulla was in Spain, he gave a reward to a poet of little<sup>6</sup> worth who had written a short poem in his honor, but he told him not to write any more. I suppose he would have refused Archias, if he had asked him for the citizenship.

<sup>1</sup> "We like to hear" = we hear most gladly.

<sup>2</sup> Avoid the use of a single noun.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *ab urbe conditā* = from the founding of the city. <sup>4</sup> See 37.

<sup>5</sup> "if . . . glory" — abl. absolute. <sup>6</sup> "of little worth" = *inane*.

## 445

## CHAPTER XI

It must be admitted that all <sup>1</sup> good men wish to be praised. If this were not the case, would those philosophers who write treatises on the contempt of glory inscribe their names to their books? I confess that I would have desired no other reward for the dangers that I underwent in your behalf than that this man should have written the history <sup>2</sup> of my consulship. If we did not all have a certain manly quality to arouse us to labor, what <sup>3</sup> reason would we have to toil and worry ourselves about the numerous cares of life?

## 446

## CHAPTER XII

Surely we who are engaged in public life ought not to seem so narrow-minded <sup>4</sup> as to think that after death we shall cease to remember what we have done in life. The most distinguished men have been exceedingly careful <sup>5</sup> to leave behind them a statue that would represent to the living the form and features of the dead; should we not much more desire to leave to posterity a sketch of our purposes and virtues prepared by men of the greatest ability? For these reasons, gentlemen of the jury, I entreat you to <sup>6</sup> preserve in your number this man who is already a citizen of Rome by law, and whose virtue and ability are attested by many witnesses.

<sup>1</sup> "all good men" = *optimus quisque*.

<sup>2</sup> *rēa*.

<sup>3</sup> "what . . . toil" — cf. in text, *quid est quod . . . exerceāmus*.

<sup>4</sup> See 29.

<sup>5</sup> "exceedingly . . . leave" = desired with the greatest care to leave.

<sup>6</sup> Do not use the infinitive.

## THE ORATION FOR MARCELLUS

447

### CHAPTERS I AND II

Cicero said that the mercy and magnanimity of Caesar forced him to break his customary<sup>1</sup> silence and to speak once more before the senate. The restoration of Marcellus was very pleasing to Cicero, for he was deeply pained that his companion in study and in public life was not allowed in Rome with him. The fact that Caesar has pardoned Marcellus is an omen of good for the future, since by this act Caesar has shown his ability<sup>2</sup> and willingness<sup>2</sup> to subordinate all personal considerations to the welfare of the state. Your achievements, Caesar, so far excel those of any other hero that eloquence<sup>3</sup> cannot fitly describe them. And yet the glory of this deed far outshines all your victories, for the reason that this honor belongs to you alone, while the credit for winning battles must be shared with the soldiers and with fortune.

448

### CHAPTERS III AND IV

Your triumphs in war, magnificent as they are,<sup>4</sup> were such as could be won by force of arms,<sup>5</sup> but this triumph over resentment and suspicion, over your feelings and personal power, can be gained only by the spirit that makes men

<sup>1</sup> Express this word by a clause.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use a noun.

<sup>3</sup> verba.

<sup>4</sup> "as they are" — need this be expressed?

<sup>5</sup> "force of arms" = force and arms.

like the gods. Your victories on the field of battle will always command attention, but your qualities of mind will inspire the love of all mankind. Time will destroy the memorials of your victories in battle, but one who has acted generously and wisely in a moment of anger will never fade from the hearts of men. You have not only surpassed all other leaders in the civil war, but you have even shown yourself superior to victory itself, for you have given back to the vanquished the very things that they hoped to secure when the war was begun.

## 449

## CHAPTERS V AND VI

The restoration of Marcellus is especially significant as<sup>1</sup> indicating how Caesar regards<sup>2</sup> those who opposed him in the contest with Pompey. And that Caesar would have avoided war, if he could, is attested by the fact that he showed so much kindness to Marcellus and myself, who both favored peace. Caesar's rival, if victorious, would have been cruel, and heaven apparently has made all hope of security depend on the gentleness and wisdom of the one who was the conqueror. Therefore I urge you to rejoice in the exercise of those noble qualities, because victories are not given us for all time by fortune, while magnanimity is a boon from heaven. Don't cease to show us that you are always master of yourself.

## 450

## CHAPTERS VII AND VIII

Now may I be allowed to refer to your fear that your life will be in danger. Who could harbor<sup>3</sup> so dreadful a

<sup>1</sup> What idea does this convey?

<sup>2</sup> "how . . . those" = what feelings Caesar has toward those.

<sup>3</sup> "harbor" = hold.

purpose? Surely none of your friends. And yet you have no foes, for those who were hostile to you have been made your warmest friends by your magnanimity. But let us magnify the danger in order to increase our watchfulness, since on the preservation of your life depends the safety of all. The country is prostrate, and you alone can quicken all its interests. For this reason I shudder when I think of your statement that you have lived long enough as<sup>1</sup> far as years and glory are concerned. To be sure, you have won renown beyond that of all other men; but, to reach the highest point of fame that lies within your reach, you have yet to lift up this prostrate nation.

## 451

## CHAPTERS IX, X, AND XI

In addition to your victories and the restoration of your enemies, you have still to restore the republic. When all this<sup>2</sup> has been accomplished, then, perhaps, some one may say you have lived enough. The years of your life will not all be spent here, for there will be nobody who will be born a hundred years hence who will not know the splendid qualities of your life. Our welfare and that of our descendants is bound up in your life; we offer to sacrifice our lives in the preservation of yours if occasion arises. In conclusion, I wish to express something of the gratitude that I and my associates feel for your generosity and magnanimity. For my own part, I am particularly grateful for your kindness to me personally in<sup>3</sup> the restoration of my dear friend Marcellus.

<sup>1</sup> "as . . . concerned" = for years and glory.

<sup>2</sup> Use the relative. What should its position be?

<sup>3</sup> "in the . . . Marcellus" — ablative absolute.

## THE ORATION FOR LIGARIUS

452

### CHAPTERS I AND II

A strange charge is brought against Ligarius, — that he was in Africa. Pansa has admitted the truthfulness of the accusation; therefore I am in a dilemma,<sup>1</sup> for I had expected that I would have to prove this fact to Caesar. There is, then, nothing for me to do but to plead for mercy. The defendant confesses, Tubero, that he joined the same party to which you and your father belonged. When Considius left Africa to return to Rome, all the provincials<sup>2</sup> requested him to appoint Ligarius to serve in his place. At the outbreak of war, Pompey's friends in Africa urged Ligarius to take command of the forces in Pompey's interests, but he steadily refused. Afterward Varus went to Africa and assumed control. The fact that Ligarius remained in the province had nothing whatever to do with the war, — his stay there was due to necessity, not to choice.

453

### CHAPTERS III AND IV

Of my own free will I favored Pompey, but at the close of the war received a full pardon at the hands of that noble man before whom I speak. Tubero and his father deliberately espoused the cause of Pompey, and fought with him, yet they were freely pardoned by Caesar. And now we

<sup>1</sup> Do not use a noun. Consider the real meaning of this word.    <sup>2</sup> See 71, 7.



appear before our magnanimous conqueror, the one to defend, the other to accuse, a man who did the very thing that you, Tubero, wished to do yourself, but could not. Your desire<sup>1</sup> to keep him in exile is exceedingly cruel, for you thus deprive him not only of his country, home, and brothers, but almost of his very life.

## 454

## CHAPTERS V AND VI

Tubero, you are a man of such virtue, learning, and kindness that I cannot understand why you wish to oppose<sup>2</sup> the pardon of Ligarius. There are some people who, after a victor has been kind toward them, do not wish anybody else to be pardoned. If you had always been friendly to Caesar yourself, you would have some reason<sup>3</sup> for urging him not to pardon Ligarius. It is strange that he should be accused rather than others, that the accusation should come from one who fought on the same side, and that there should be any new charge to bring against him. He may be called unfortunate, but he does not deserve to be called criminal any more than you or I do.

## 455

## CHAPTERS VII, VIII, IX

Tubero's complaint against Ligarius was that he did not receive him into the province. If Tubero had secured control of Africa, do you not think he would have handed it over to Pompey? Nobody can doubt that he would have done so, for as soon as Ligarius was prevented from landing in Africa, he went off to Pompey, and not to Caesar. And

<sup>1</sup> Express the idea by a clause.

<sup>2</sup> "oppose the pardon," cf. in text, *nē impetrēmus oppugnābis*.

<sup>3</sup> "have some reason for" = have why you should.

yet, in spite of these services, Pompey was lukewarm<sup>1</sup> in his attachment to Tubero. May it not be true that resentment<sup>2</sup> for a fancied<sup>2</sup> personal injury influenced Tubero to take this action against Ligarius?

## 456

## CHAPTERS X, XI, XII

Although there are extenuating<sup>3</sup> circumstances, yet the entire case rests with Caesar's forgiving spirit. I beg of you, Caesar, to remember how many friends you would please by the restoration<sup>4</sup> of Ligarius. Take into consideration also the grief of these brothers, who are so closely attached to that one in exile. And do not forget the service which Titus Ligarius rendered you, and the fact that the restoration<sup>4</sup> of the exiled brother would bind them all closely to you. As in the case of Marcellus, you have an opportunity to exercise those qualities that have led men to consider you almost divine.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *languidiore studiō*.

<sup>2</sup> Recast this entire sentence.

<sup>3</sup> Consider the real meaning of this expression, and express the idea in Latin.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative absolute.

## EXERCISES FOR GENERAL REVIEW

457

[Review sections 1-51.]

1. He was a man of great bravery, and yet in many matters he showed too little foresight. 2. When he needed money, he could always persuade his father. 3. I will have lasting friendship with you, if you will use your influence in my behalf. 4. My brother and sister were worthy of very great praise for their wisdom. 5. The enemy advanced five miles farther than we did. 6. We were deprived of provisions, because we remained there many days. 7. When Cicero had been elected consul, he performed his duties very boldly. 8. After we came to Rome, they demanded many favors<sup>1</sup> of us. 9. He put me in charge of fortifications that were many miles long. 10. I am thoroughly ashamed of her, because she is not skillful in such matters. 11. He was pardoned when we found that the book was not very valuable. 12. Your weapons were like mine, and were very useful to me.

458

[Review sections 58-96.]

1. The people I saw in Athens were his friends. 2. Each of us enjoys his own friends, but not those of other people. 3. Cicero took as much time for study as other men do for pleasure. 4. After Caesar had fortified the camp and encouraged his men, he waited for<sup>2</sup> the enemy to attack him. 5. All the bravest soldiers fought in different parts of the battle, although many had been killed in doing so.<sup>3</sup> 6. You will not set out to accomplish this with a youth for a leader, will you? 7. Having finished matters at Rome, Caesar left the city for the purpose of engaging Pompey's forces. 8. Did you

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> See 156, 2.

<sup>3</sup> id.

believe me when I told you that? No. 9. There have been two citizens famous in Rome, one of whom conquered provinces, the other preserved the city. 10. This is a very easy thing to do, is it not? 11. You ought to come, if anybody calls you. 12. Hannibal, having drawn<sup>1</sup> the Romans into an ambush, surrounded and killed a large number of them.

## 459

[Review sections 102-136.]

1. Do not fear the enemy; let us remember that Caesar is our leader. 2. Caesar told the Gauls that they might enjoy their own laws. 3. I have no doubt that Caesar would have pardoned more of his enemies, had he lived longer. 4. We ought to obey the laws of our country. (Express in three ways.) 5. Ought we not to have praised him for his courage? 6. Some one may hesitate to ask us where we are going. 7. We have had a residence at Rome for a long time. 8. If the letters should contain nothing new, should<sup>2</sup> we blame Cicero for his zeal and prudence? 9. What could I do, when my father told me what he saw? 10. Would that a more skillful leader were in charge of the fortifications, now that they have been finished! 11. If every soldier does not do his duty, I fear that we shall not be victorious. 12. Had Caesar been cruel by nature, he would have killed many of his enemies after the defeat of Pompey.

## 460

[Review sections 141-175.]

1. The senate voted not to follow Caesar's opinion, but to put the conspirators to death. 2. Catiline could not prevent Cicero from disclosing all his plans. 3. Pompey was not greedy enough to order<sup>3</sup> the houses of the allies to be plundered. 4. Cicero called the senate together to lay before them Catiline's plans. 5. Cicero advised Catiline to leave the city if he wished to free the consul from fear. 6. For many years Caesar prevented the Germans from

<sup>1</sup> inducō.    <sup>2</sup> Consider carefully the real meaning of this auxiliary.    <sup>3</sup> Use iubeō.

invading Italy. 7. When Caesar ordered<sup>1</sup> the enemy to give hostages, they used to obey. 8. The general said, "Wait until you see the whites<sup>2</sup> of their eyes." 9. The Germans were so thoroughly frightened that they did not stop fleeing until they came to the Rhine. 10. I think the Helvetians would not have emigrated, had they known how powerful Caesar was. 11. They were punished for<sup>3</sup> trying to burn the city. 12. We will thank Cicero for persuading Catiline to go into exile. 13. Cicero was the only man who was fit to be consul at such a crisis. 14. He sent a messenger to order the enemy to surrender. 15. He said he would wait for the arrival<sup>4</sup> of his friends.

461. At their interview Caesar showed Ariovistus that he was kindly disposed toward him ; yet he could not allow him to wage war on the Aedui, who were allies of the Roman people. Ariovistus replied that, since he had crossed the Rhine only on invitation, and had then been attacked by the Gauls, there was no reason why<sup>5</sup> they should not pay their taxes now that they had been defeated. Certainly the friendship of the Roman people ought not to prevent him from having what is justly his. If he was the first to come into Gaul, the Roman people had no business there ; therefore if they desired his friendship and help in any wars they wished to wage, they must lead their army out of that part of Gaul at once. Caesar refused to obey Ariovistus, and in the battle that followed Ariovistus was severely defeated.

462. From the numerous battles that Caesar fought with the Gauls, one<sup>6</sup> can easily understand how skillful he was in military affairs. He would<sup>7</sup> march so rapidly and appear so unexpectedly among those who were meditating revolt, that they had no opportunity of perfecting their arrangements. On one occasion the Veneti, who live along the seacoast, realizing that Caesar had no fleet,

<sup>1</sup> Use *imperō*.

<sup>2</sup> Use a relative clause.

<sup>3</sup> Do not use *ūnus*.

<sup>4</sup> "whites . . . eyes" = their very eyes.

<sup>5</sup> Do not use a noun.

<sup>6</sup> *quā rē*.

<sup>7</sup> What does this auxiliary mean ?

felt sure that they could raise<sup>1</sup> the standard of revolt and prevent the Romans from ruling them any longer. But Caesar quickly sent his officers in different directions to hold the other Gauls to their allegiance,<sup>2</sup> and then collected a fleet with which to fight the Veneti. He found that the ships of the Veneti were so strong that the Romans could not injure them by their customary<sup>3</sup> methods, so he ordered his men to seize their rigging with long poles and thus board their ship. These tactics<sup>4</sup> were very useful to the Romans, and enabled them to capture the enemy's ships one by one.

463. During the consulship of Cicero, a senator named Catiline formed a plan to destroy the government, and persuaded several men of noble birth to join with him. But Cicero was on the lookout to see that the republic suffered no harm, and knew where his associates in crime met and what plans they adopted. He therefore called the senate together to lay the whole matter before them. The result was that the citizens were so enraged that they would have driven Catiline from the city, had he not left that very night of his own accord. There is no patriotic citizen who will not acknowledge that Cicero should be accorded the highest praise for disclosing such a foul conspiracy.

464. Although Catiline had left Rome, it would have been a difficult matter to secure evidence against those conspirators who remained, if a most fortunate occurrence had not happened. Cicero was informed that certain ambassadors from the Allobroges, who had come to Rome at this time, were being urged by the conspirators to incite an insurrection in Gaul. So Cicero asked the ambassadors to secure letters from the conspirators in their own handwriting. As the Gauls were leaving Rome, they were arrested, and these very letters, with unbroken seals, were seized as proofs of the conspirators' guilt. A few days later the senate was assembled,

<sup>1</sup> "raise . . . revolt" = make a rebellion.

<sup>2</sup> Express this adjective by a clause in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> officium.

<sup>4</sup> rēs.

and after a long consultation they voted that the conspirators who remained in the city should be put to death.

465. Before Caesar set out from Rome the Helvetians decided to burn all their villages (*vicus*) and abandon their country because they were being hard pressed by the Germans. But as soon as Caesar was informed of this design,<sup>1</sup> he hastened from the city, and after gathering as large an army as possible, pitched his camp near Geneva (*Genava*), in order to prevent the Helvetians from crossing the Rhone (*Rhodanus*) into the Roman province. Then the Helvetians sent envoys to Caesar and said, "We desire to journey through the province without causing any injury, and we ask that we may be allowed to do this with your good will." [Yale, 1900.]

466. Render into Latin the following:—

When Cicero, according to custom, ascended the rostra on the last day of the year to give an account to the people of the events of his consulship, Metellus forbade him to speak. "The man," he said, "who condemned our fellow-citizens unheard, shall not himself be listened to." Then Cicero cried out, "I declare that I have saved the republic and the city." The people applauded, and with one voice responded that he had spoken the truth.

He was never able to persuade his brother to go to Rome.

The consul did not know what plan to adopt.

Caesar was killed March fifteenth.

Write the following passage in indirect discourse introduced by *Cicero locutus est*:—

Vos, Quirites, quoniam iam nox est, venerati Jovem in vestra tecta discedite; et ea, quamquam iam est periculum depulsum, tamen aequae ac priore nocte custodiis vigiliisque defendite. Id ne vobis diutius faciendum sit, atque ut in perpetua pace esse possitis, providebo. [Wellesley, 1901.]<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

**467.** In the consulship of Cicero, Catiline collected a band of worthless men to destroy the Roman commonwealth. When Cicero saw that the conspirators had established a camp in Etruria, and that the number of the enemy grew every day, and that the state was in the greatest danger, he begged of the senators to decree that the consuls should see (to it) that the state should suffer no harm. By this speech he brought it about (*efficere*) that Catiline left Rome and went to the camp of Manlius, which was at Faesulae. This he would not have done if he had not seen that all his plans had been revealed (to be revealed = *patere*). [Yale, 1901.]

**468.** 1. When he had finished the war with the Germans, Caesar thought that for many reasons he ought to go to Rome. But he wished first to cross the Rhine before other Germans had crossed over into Gaul, because he had heard that a body had set out to take possession of the left bank, and they would harass the Gauls if they were allowed to do this.

2. Do we seem to be so mean-spirited, all of us who have passed our lives in the service of the state, that when up to the very end we have not drawn a calm breath, we should think that all things are going to perish along with us? Have other men left statues, the likeness of the body and not of the soul, and ought we not much rather to leave a remembrance of our virtue? [Princeton, 1900.]

**469.** Although only a small part of the summer was left, Caesar determined to cross into Britain, for he had observed that in nearly all the wars with the Gauls aid had been furnished to the enemy by the inhabitants of that island. Since, however, he could learn nothing from the Gauls about the nature of the island and of its people, and was afraid that some misfortune might happen to him if he acted incautiously, he sent a lieutenant to find out all he could about that portion of Britain which was nearest to Gaul.

In the meantime Caesar gathered together about eighty ships in which to carry across the troops if a favorable report was made by



his lieutenant. When after five days this officer had returned and reported all that he had seen, Caesar at once set sail with two legions of infantry and ordered the cavalry to follow with all possible speed.

The cavalry, however, waited more than five days before setting out, and then proceeded so slowly that one battle had already been fought with the enemy before they came within sight of Caesar and the infantry. [Harvard, 1897.]

470. Caesar, knowing that the enemy were near, gave orders that six legions in light marching order should precede the baggage and fortify the camp. The Nervii supposed that each legion would arrive followed by its own baggage. If the Romans had come to the river in this fashion, they would have been defeated; but the Nervii waited until they caught sight of the first baggage train, and by that time there were so many soldiers on the hill that the Romans were not overpowered by the first rush. Yet even so one cannot doubt that Caesar's difficulties were great. He saw that his cavalry had been routed, and that the barbarians were rushing from the forest to the river. There was no time to send a staff officer to tell the soldiers what to do. But, well trained as they were by previous campaigning, the soldiers knew their duty. [Harvard, 1900.]

471. The Spartans, getting wind of the conspiracy, recalled Pausanias; but, being unable to find any clear proofs, acquitted him on the capital charge, while punishing him by a fine. When, however, he continued to correspond with the Persians, he was detected in the following manner. A slave who was sent to Persia, and who had noticed that none of those dispatched on like errands ever returned, feared that if he obeyed his master's injunctions he should meet with death. He therefore delivered the letter to the ephors, and afterward, in a conference, forced Pausanias to confess his crime so plainly that the ephors, who were concealed near by and heard the confession, were able to arrest this disloyal citizen. [Harvard, 1899.]

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

NOTE. — Words in SMALL CAPITALS are synonyms of the first word given.

### A

**abandon**, *relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus*,  
LEAVE BEHIND; *abiciō, icere, icī,*  
*iectus*, THROW FROM OR AWAY.

**ability**, *ingenium, ī, n.*

**able**, am able, *possum, posse, potui.*

**about**, around, *circum*, prep. w. acc.;

about, *circiter*, adv., used w. numerals;  
about, concerning, *dē* w. abl.

**absent**, *absēns*, gen. *absentis*.

**accept**, *accipio, cipere, cēpi, ceptus*.

**accomplish**, *cōficiō, ere, feci, factus*.

**accord**, his own accord, *sua sponte*.

**account**, on account of, *propter, ob*,  
preps. w. acc.

**accuse**, *accusō, āre, āvi, ātus*.

**accustomed**, be accustomed, *soleō,*  
*ēre, solitus sum; cōsuēscō, ere,*  
*suēvi, suētus*.

**acknowledge**, *cōfiteor, ēri, cōfessus*  
*sum*.

**across**, *trāns*, prep. w. acc.

**adopt**, *insistō, ere, stitī, —; capio, ere,*  
*cēpi, captus; instituo, ere, stitui,*  
*stitutus*. See use.

**advance**, *prōgredior, gredi, gressus*  
*sum*.

**advise**, *moneō, ēre, ui, itus; suadeō,*  
*ēre, suāsi, suāsum*.

**Aedui**, *Aeduī, ōrum*, m. pl.

**affair**, *rēs, rei, f.*

**afraid**, be afraid of, *timeō, ēre, ui. —*

See fear.

**after**, *postquam*, conj.

**against**, *in, contrā*, preps. w. acc.

**aid**, *auxilium, ī, n.; iuvō, āre, iūvi,*  
*iūtum*.

**alarm**, *commoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus*.

**Alexander**, *Alexander, dri*, m.

**alive**, be alive, be living, *vivō, ere,*  
*vixi, victus*.

**all**, *omnis, e*, EVERY, THE WHOLE,  
ENTIRE, pl., ALL (persons), ALL  
(things); *totus, a, um*, ALL THE, THE  
WHOLE, ENTIRE, TOTAL; *universus,*  
*a, um*, ALL (taken together),  
WHOLE, ENTIRE, UNIVERSAL; *cuncti,*  
*ae, a*, ALL (united in a body), ALL  
TOGETHER.

**allow**, *patior, ī, passus sum; licet, ēre,*  
*licui or licitum est*, used impersonally.

**ally**, *socius, ī, m.*

**almost**, *prope*, adv.

**alone**, *solus, a, um*.

**already**, *iam*, adv.

**also**, *et, etiam*.

**although**, *quamquam, quamvis, cum*,  
conj. See 171. 87. 6.

**always**, *semper*, adv.

**am**, *sum, esse, fui, futurus*.

**ambassador**, *lēgātus, ī, m.*

**among**, *inter*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep.  
w. abl. and acc.

**ancestors**, *maiorēs, um*, m. pl.

**and**, *et, -que, ac or atque*, conj. See 82.

**angry**, be angry with, *irascor, ī, irā-*  
*tus sum, w. dat.*

announce, *nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
 another, *alius, a, ud.* [sum.  
 answer, *respondē, īre, spondī, spōm*.  
 any, anybody, any one, anything, *aliquis*; in a negative sentence, *ūllus*; after *sī, nisi, nē*, and *num, quis*.  
 apologize, *satisfaciō, ere, fēcī, factus*.  
 approach, *appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus*,  
 COME NEAR TO, DRAW NIGH, w. dat.; *adeō, adire, advē or adiī, aditus*, GO TO, VISIT, w. acc.  
 arise, *cōrior, īri, ortus sum*.  
 arm one's self, passive of *armō, āre, āvī, ātus*; *arma capiō, ere, cēpī, captus*.  
 arms, *arma, ōrum, n. pl.*  
 army, *exercitus, ūs, m.*  
 around, about, *circum, w. acc.*  
 arrest, *comprehendō, ere,prehendī, prehensus*.  
 arrival, *adventus, ūs, m.*  
 arrive, *perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum*.  
 as much . . . as, *tantus . . . quantus, a, um; tam . . . quam*.  
 as soon as, *simul ac (atque); cum primum*.  
 as soon as possible, *quam primum*, adv.  
 ashamed, something causes one to be ashamed, *pudet, pudēre, puduit, or puditum est*. See 27.  
 ask, *rogō, āre, āvī, ātus*; ask advice of, *cōsulō, ere, cōsului, cōsultus, w. acc.*; ask for, demand, *postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. acc.*; *quaerō, ere, sivi, situs; poscō, petō*. See 15.  
 Aspisia, *Aspasia, ae, f.*  
 assault, make an assault, *signa inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus*; to make an assault on the enemy, *in hostis signa inferre*.

assemble, *conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum*.  
 at all, *omniō, adv.*  
 at the house of, *apud, prep. w. acc.*  
 Athenians, *Athēniēnsēs, ium, m. pl.*  
 Athens, *Athēnae, ārum, f. pl.*  
 attack, *impetum faciō, facere, feci, factus*; *ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum*; to attack the enemy, *in hostis impetum facere*.  
 attempt, *cōnor, āri, ātus sum*.  
 avoid, *vitō, āre, āvī, ātus*.



band, company, *manus, ūs, f.*  
 battle, *proelium, ī, n.*; *pūgna, ae, f.*  
 be born, descended, *nāscor, ī, nātus sum*.  
 be without, be deprived of, *careō, ēre, nō, itūrus*.  
 bear, *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus*; bear with, *perfero, ferre, tuli, lātus*.  
 because, *quod, quia, quoniam, conj.*  
 See 173.  
 become, be made, *fiō, fierī, factus sum*.  
 before, ante, prep. w. acc.; *antequam, priusquam, conj.*; the night before, *superiōre nocte*.  
 beg, beg for, *orō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, ivī or iī, itus*.  
 began, *coeptī or coeptus sum, coepisse*, defective verb; *coeptus sum* is only used with passive infinitives.  
 begin, *incipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus*; begin a battle, *proelium committō, ere, misi, missus*.  
 behalf, in behalf of, *prō, w. abl.*  
 Belgians, *Belgae, ārum, m. pl.*  
 believe, *crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditūrus*  
 besiege, *oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
 betake one's self, *sē cōferre; cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus*.

betray, *prōdō, ere, diā, ditus*.  
 bid (at an auction), *liceor, licēri, licitus sum*.  
 bind, *vinciō, ire, vinxi, vinctus*.  
 blame, *culpō, āre, āvi, ātus*.  
 blood, *sanguis, sanguinis, m*.  
 board, board ship, *trāscendō, ere, dī, scēnsurus, in nāvem*.  
 boat, *linter, lintris, f.*; *nāvis, is, f*.  
 body, *corpus, corporis, n*.  
 boldness, *audācia, ae, f*.  
 born, be born, *nāscor, ī, nātus sum*.  
 book, *liber, librī, m*.  
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*.  
 bound, be bound, pass. of *contineō, ēre, uī, tentus*.  
 boy, *puer, ī, m*.  
 brave, *fortis, e*; *audāx, ācis*.  
 bravely, *fortiter, audācter, advs*.  
 bravery, *virtūs, ūtis, f*.  
 bridge, *pōns, pontis, m*.  
 brother, *frāter, frātris, m*.  
 building, *ŕecta, ōrum, n.*; *aedificium, ī, n*.  
 burn, burn up, *combūrō, ūrere, ūssi, ūstus*; burn alive, *ignī cremō, I*.  
 business, *negōtium, ī, n*.  
 but, *sed, autem*; but if, *sīn, conjs*.  
 buy, *emō, ere, ēmi, ēmptus*.  
 by, *ā, ab, prep. w. abl*.



Caesar, *Caesar, aris, m*.  
 call, *appellō, āre, āvi, ātus*, ADDRESS,  
 CALL BY NAME, ENTITLE; *nōminō, āre, āvi, ātus*, NAME, CALL by name;  
*convocō, āre, āvi, ātus*, SUMMON,  
 CALL together.  
 camp, *castra, ōrum, n. pl*.  
 can, *possum, posse, potui*; can not but,  
*facere nōn possum quin, w. subj*.

capture, *capio, capere, cēpi, captus*.  
 care, *cūra, ae, f*.  
 care for, *prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, w. dat*.  
 carefully, *diligenter, adv*.  
 Catiline, *Catilina, ae, m*.  
 cattle, *pecus, oris, n*.  
 cause, *causa, ae, f*.  
 cavalry, *equitātus, ūs, m.*; *equitēs, itum, m. (pl.)*.  
 cease, *dēsīnō, ere, (sīvi) or ii, situs*.  
 certainly, *certē, adv*.  
 children, *liberī, ōrum, m. pl*.  
 choose, *dēligō, ere, legī, lēctus*.  
 Cicero, *Cicerō, ōnis, m*.  
 citizen, *civis, is, m. and f*.  
 city, *urbs, urbis, f*.  
 collect, *colligō, ligere, legī, lēctus*.  
 come, *veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum*.  
 command, *imperō, āre, āvi, ātus, w. dat.*; *iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus*; be in command of, *praesum, esse, fui*.  
 commander, *imperātor, ōris, m*.  
 companion, ally, *socius, ī, m.*; *comes, itis, m. and f*.  
 compare, *comparō, āre, āvi, ātus*.  
 compel, *cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactus*; *compellō, ere, puli, pulsus*.  
 complain, complain of, *queror, ī, questus sum*.  
 conceal, *cēlō, āre, āvi, ātus*.  
 conquer, *vincō, ere, vīcī, victus*.  
 conspiracy, *coniūrātiō, ōnis, f*.  
 conspirators, *coniūrātī, ōrum, m. pl*.  
 consul, *cōsul, ulis, m*.  
 consult, *cōsulō, ere, cōsului, cōsulutus, w. acc.*; *w. dat., consult for, consult the interests of*.  
 contain. See hold.  
 control, *imperium, ī, n*.  
 converse, *colloquor, loquī, locutus sum*.  
 convince. See persuade.

Corinth, *Corinthus*, *i*, *f*.  
 country, *terra*, *ae*, *f*., LAND, EARTH,  
 COUNTRY; *patria*, *ae*, *f*., NATIVE  
 COUNTRY, FATHERLAND; *rūs*, *rūris*,  
*n*., COUNTRY as opposed to city;  
 into the country, *rūs*; in the coun-  
 try, *rūrī*.  
 courage, bravery, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, *f*.;  
*audācia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 covetous, *avidus*, *a*, *um*.  
 cowardly, *ignāvus*, *a*, *um*.  
 Crassus, *Crassus*, *i*, *m*.  
 crime, *scelus*, *eris*, *n*.  
 critical point, crisis, *discrimen*, *inis*, *n*.  
 cross, *trānsēō*, *ere*, *ivī* or *iī*, *ītus*.  
 cruel, *crūdēlis*, *e*.

## D

danger, *periculum*, *i*, *n*.  
 dare, *audeō*, *ere*, *ausus sum*.  
 day, *diēs*, *ēi*, *m*. and *f*.; to-day, *hodiē*;  
 yesterday, *hesternō diē*.  
 dear, *cārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 death, *mors*, *mortis*, *f*.; put to death,  
*neō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 decree, *dēcernō*, *ere*, *crēvī*, *crētus*; de-  
 cree of the senate, *senātus cōsul-*  
*tum*, *i*, *n*.  
 deed, *factum*, *i*, *n*.  
 deep, *altus*, *a*, *um*.  
 defeat, conquer, *vincō*, *ere*, *vīcī*, *victus*.  
 defend, *dēfendō*, *ere*, *fendī*, *fēnsus*.  
 defendant, *reus*, *i*, *m*.  
 delay, *moror*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.  
 deliberate, *dēliberō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 demand, *postulō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*. See  
 15.  
 democrats, *populārēs*, *ium*, *m*.  
 denies, says not, *negō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 depart, *discēdō*, *ere*, *cessī*, *cessum*; *dē-*  
*cēdō*, *ere*, *cessī*, *cessum*.

deprive, *ēripiō*, *ripere*, *ripui*, *reptus*;  
*privō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; be deprived  
 of, lack, *careō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itūrus*.  
 See 39.

depth, *altitūdō*, *inis*, *f*.

desert, abandon, forsake, *dēserō*, *serere*,  
*serui*, *sertus*. See abandon.

desire, *volō*, *velle*, *volui*.

destroy, *dēlēō*, *ēre*, *ēvī*, *ētus*.

destruction, *exitium*, *i*, *n*., A GOING  
 OUT, GOING TO NOUGHT, RUIN; *in-*  
*teritus*, *ūs*, *m*., A GOING AMONG  
 things so as to be no longer seen,  
 BECOMING LOST, GOING TO RUIN;  
*perniciēs*, *ēi*, *f*., KILLING UTTERLY,  
 SLAUGHTER, OVERTHROW, DESTRUC-  
 TION; *interneciō*, *ōnis*, *f*., destruc-  
 tion, ANNIHILATION.

determine, *cōstituō*, *ere*, *uī*, *ūtus*.

devastate, *vāstō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

die, *moriōr*, *mori*, *mortuus sum*.

differ, *differō*, *differre*, *distulī*, *dilā-*  
*tus*.

difficult, *difficilis*, *e*.

diligently, *diligenter*, *adv*.

diminish, *dēminuō*, *ere*, *dēminui*, *dē-*  
*minutus*.

direction, *pars*, *partis*, *f*.

disaster, *calamitās*, *ātis*, *f*.

disclose. See expose.

disregard, neglect (advice), *omitto*,  
*mittere*, *miſi*, *missus*.

district, territory, field, *ager*, *agrī*, *m*.

do, *faciō*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*.

doubt, *dubiō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; there is  
 no doubt that, *nōn est dubium quān-*  
*w*. subj.

doubtful, *dubius*, *a*, *um*.

drive away, *dēpellō*, *ere*, *dēpulī*, *dēpul-*  
*sus*; drive out, *expellō*, *ere*, *expulī*,  
*expulsus*; *ēiciō*, *ere*, *ēiēcī*, *ēiectus*.

duty, *officium*, *i*, n.  
 dwell, dwell in, *incolō, ere, coluī,*  
*cultus; habiō, i*.  
 dwelling, *domicilium*, *i*, n.

**E**

each, *quisque*.  
 each other. See 68.  
 eagerly, *cupidē, adv.*  
 earth, *orbis terrarum, orbis terrae;*  
*orbis, is, m.*  
 easily, *facile, adv.*  
 easy, *facilis, e, adj.*  
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel.*  
 elect, *creō, āre, āvī, ātus.*  
 embassy, *lēgatiō, ōnis, f.*  
 emigrate = go out from territory.  
 enable, *efficiō, ere, fecī, factus.*  
 encourage, *cohortor, āri, ātus sum,*  
 EXHORT, ANIMATE, ADMONISH;  
*cōsōlor, āri, ātus sum, COMFORT*  
 GREATLY, CHEER.  
 end, *finis, is, m.*  
 enemy, *hostis, is. m. and f., AN EN-*  
 EMY OF ONE'S COUNTRY, *inimicus, i,*  
*m., A PERSONAL ENEMY.*  
 engage. See fight.  
 enjoy, *fruo, fruī, fructus sum; en-*  
 joy, use, *ūtor, ūti, ūsus. See 44.*  
 enjoyment, *fructus, ūs, m.*  
 enough, *satis.*  
 especially, *praesertim, adv.*  
 establish, *cōstituō, ere, ūi, ūtus.*  
 Europe, *Eurōpa, ae, f.*  
 even if, *etiam si.*  
 ever, *semper, ALWAYS; umquam (un-*  
 quam), AT ANY TIME.  
 every, each, *quisque; every one, quis-*  
*que, quaeque, quodque (quicque,*  
*quidque).*  
 evidence, *indiciū, i, n.*

except, *praeter, prep. w. acc.*  
 exchange, *dō, dare, dedi, datus (with*  
*inter and reflex. pronoun).*  
 execute, perform, *administrō, āre, āvī,*  
*ātus.*  
 exhort, *cohortor, āri, ātus sum.*  
 exile, *exsilium, i, n.*  
 expect, hope for, *spērō, āre, āvī, ātus.*  
 expose, bring to light, *patesfaciō, ere,*  
*fēcī, factus; expose (to danger),*  
*offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus.*  
 eye, *oculus, i, m.*

**F**

fact, *rēs, rei, f.*  
 faithful, *fidēlis, e.*  
 fair, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.*  
 fame, *glōria, ae, f.*  
 family (i.e. stock), *genus, eris, n.;*  
*gēns, ntis, f.*  
 famous, *clārus, a, um.*  
 far, *longē, adv.*  
 farmer, *agricola, ae, m.*  
 father, *pater, patris, m.*  
 fault, *culpa, ae, f.*  
 fear, *timor, ōris, m.; metus, ūs, m.;*  
 to fear, *vereor, ērī, itus sum; timeō,*  
*ēre, ūi; metuō, ere, metuī, (metūtus).*  
 feel thankful, *grātiā habēō, ēre, ūi,*  
*itus.*  
 fellow = man, sometimes by *ille.*  
 fellow-citizen, *civis, is, m.*  
 fertile, *opīmus, a, um; fertilis, e.*  
 few, *paucī, ae, a.*  
 field, *ager, agrī, m.;* in the field, *mili-*  
*tiae (loc. case).*  
 fifteen, *quīndecim, indecl.*  
 fifty, *quīnquāgintā, indecl.*  
 fight, *pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, used im-*  
 personally in the passive; e.g. *pūg-*  
*nātur, it is fought, they fight.*

**find**, *inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus*, COME UPON, DISCOVER; *reperiō, ire, reperi* and *repperi, repertus*, MEET WITH, FIND OUT; *cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvi, cōgnitus*, BECOME ACQUAINTED WITH, LEARN, KNOW.

**finish**, *cōficiō, ficere, fēcī, factus*.

**first**, *primus, a, um*.

**fit**, fitted, *aptus, a, um; idōneus, a, um*.

**five**, *quīque*, indecl.

**flee**, *fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitūrus; terga vertō, ere, verti, versus*.

**fleet**, *classis, is, f*.

**flight**, *fuga, ae, f*; put to flight, *in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus; fugō, āre, āvi, ātus*.

**flow**, *fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxus*.

**follow**, follow close after, *subsequor, ī, secutus sum*.

**following**, *posterus, a, um*. See 59. 3.

**foolish**, stupid, *āmēns*, gen. *āmentis; stultus, a, um*.

**foot**, *pēs, pedis, m*.

**for**, *prō*, prep. w. abl.; *nam*, conj.; for a long time, now for a long time, *iam diū, iam dūdum*. See 102. 3; 103. 2.

**for the future**, *in reliquum tempus*.

**for the most part**, *māximam partem*.

**for the sake of**, *causā*, abl. and placed after its limiting gen.

**force**, *vīs, (vis), f*; force, band, *manus, ūs, f*; forces, troops, *cōpiae, ārum, f. pl*.

**foresight**, *prudentia, ae, f*.

**forest**, *silva, ae, f*.

**forget**, *oblivīscor, ī, oblitus sum*.

**form**, make, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*; form, draw up, *instruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus*.

**former**, *ille*.

**fortifications**, *moenia, ium, n*.

**fortify**, *mūniō, ire, ivi, itus*.

**found**, build (a city), *condō, ere, condidī, conditus*.

**four**, *quattuor*, indecl.

**free**, set free, *liberō, āre, āvi, ātus*;

free, *liber, libera, liberum*.

**friend**, *amicus, ī, m*.

**frighten** thoroughly, *perterreō, ēre, ui, itus*.

**from**, out of, *ē, ex*, prep. w. abl.;

from, away from, from near, *ā, ab, abs*, prep. w. abl.; *dē*, down from.

**front**, first, *primus, a, um*.

**full**, *plēnus, a, um*.

## G

**gate**, *porta, ae, f*.

**gather**, come together, *conveniō, ire, vēni, ventum*.

**Gaul**, *Gallia, ae, f*.

**Gauls**, *Galli, ōrum, m. pl*.

**general**, *imperātor, ōris, m*; *dux, ducis, m*. and *f*.

**German**, *Germānus, a, um*.

**Germans**, *Germāni, ōrum, m. pl*.

**Germany**, *Germānia, ae, f*.

**get a firm footing**, *fīrmiler insistō, ere, stitī, —*.

**get possession of**, *potior, potiri, potitus sum*.

**get together**. See *collect*.

**gift**, *dōnum, ī, n*.

**girl**, *puella, ae, f*.

**give**, *dō, dare, dedī, datus*; give back, *reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus*;

give up, *abiciō, icere, iēcī, iectus*;

give up, desist from, *dēsistō, sistere, stitī, stitum*.

**glad**, *laetus, a, um*.

glory, *glōria*, *ae*, *f*.  
 go, *eō*, *ire*, *ivī* or *iī*, *itum*; go back,  
*redeō*, *redīre*, *redīi*, *reditus*; go to,  
*visit*, *adeō*, *adīre*, *adivī* or *adii*, *aditus*.  
 god, *deus*, *dei*, *m*.  
 good, *bonus*, *a*, *um*.  
 government, *imperium*, *i*, *n*.  
 grain, *frūmentum*, *i*, *n*.  
 grant, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*.  
 great, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*; how great,  
*quantus*, *a*, *um*.  
 greedy, *avidus*, *a*, *um*; *cupidus*, *a*, *um*.

## H

handwriting, *manus*, *ūs*, *f*.  
 happens, it happens, comes to pass,  
 the result is, *accidit*, *isse*; *contingit*,  
*contigisse*, *contigit*; *fit*, *fieri*, *factum*  
*est*; these verbs are often used with  
 a substantive clause as subject.  
 happy, *beātus*, *a*, *um*.  
 harass, *laccō*, *cessere*, *cessivī* or *iī*,  
*cessitus*.  
 hardly, *vix*, *adv*.  
 harm, *detrimentum*, *i*, *n*.  
 hasten, make haste, *mātūrō*, *āre*, *āvī*,  
*ātus*.  
 hate, *odī*, *odisse*, *ōsūrus*, *perf*. with  
*pres*. meaning.  
 haul, draw, *dūcō*, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*;  
*trahō*, *ere*, *trāxī*, *tractus*.  
 have, *habēō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus*.  
 he, she, it, is, *ea*, *id*.  
 hear, *audiō*, *īre*, *ivī*, *itus*.  
 height, depth, *altitudō*, *inis*, *f*.  
 help, *succurrō*, *ere*, *succurri*, *succur-*  
*sum*; *iuvō*, *āre*, *iūvi*, *iūtum*.  
 here, *hic*, *adv*.; to be here, *adsum*.  
 hesitate, *dubitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 high, deep, *altus*, *a*, *um*.  
 highest, *summus*, *a*, *um*.

hill, *collis*, *is*, *m*.  
 himself, herself, itself. See 66.  
 hinder, *impediō*, *īre*, *ivī*, *itus*,  
 ENTANGLE, EMBARRASS, HINDER;  
*reprimō*, *ere*, *pressī*, *pressus*, PRESS  
 BACK, KEEP BACK, RESTRAIN, HIN-  
 DER.  
 hindrance, *impedimentum*, *i*, *n*.  
 his, her, its, *suus*, *a*, *um*, when refer-  
 ring to the same person or thing as  
 the subject of its sentence, other-  
 wise *eius*. See 67.  
 hitherto, *adhūc*, *adv*.  
 hold, *tencō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentus*.  
 home, homeward, *domum*; at home,  
*domi*.  
 hope, *spēs*, *spei*, *f*.; to hope, *spērō*,  
*āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 horse, *equus*, *i*, *m*.  
 hostage, *obses*, *obsidis*, *m*. and *f*.  
 hour, *hōra*, *ae*, *f*.  
 house, *domus*, *i* (*ūs*), *f*. the generic  
 word; *tectum*, *i*, *n*. that which  
 covers, THE ROOF, by metonymy,  
 HOUSE; at the house of, *apud* and  
*ad*, *preps*. *w*. *acc*.  
 how great, *quantus*, *a*, *um*.  
 how many, *quot*, *indecl*. *adj*.; *quam*  
*multī*, *ae*, *a*.  
 hundred, *centum*, *indecl*.  
 hurl, *coniciō*, *icere*, *ieci*, *iectus*.

## I

I, *ego*. See 64.  
 if, *sī*, *conj*.; if only, *modo*, *dum*, *dum*  
*modo*, *conjs*.  
 ignorant, *ignārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 illustrious, *clārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 implore, invoke, call upon, *vocō*, *āre*,  
*āvī*, *ātus*.  
 important. See 29.



in, *in*, prep. w. abl.  
 in the vicinity of, *ad*, prep. w. acc.  
 inactivity, *inertia*, *ae*, f.  
 incite, *inflammō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 indeed, at least, *quidem*, adv.; placed immediately after the emphatic word.  
 infantry, *pedītēs*, *um*, m. pl.; *pedītātus*, *ūs*, m.  
 inflict punishment, *supplicium sūmō*, *ere*, *sūmpsī*, *sūmptus*; to inflict punishment on a soldier, *dē mīlite supplicium sūmere*; *īnferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *illātus*.  
 influence, *auctōritās*, *ātis*, f.; have influence, exert influence, *valeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itūrus*.  
 inform any one, *aliquem certīorem faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*; be informed, *certior fiō*, *ferī*, *factus sum*.  
 inhabitant, *incola*, *ae*, m.  
 injure, harm, *noceō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itūrus*.  
 inquire, *quaerō*, *ere*, *quaesivī*, *quaesitus*.  
 intend, *esse in animō*, and dat.  
 intercessor, *dēprecātor*, *ōris*, m.  
 interest, *intersum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*, used impersonally. See 28.  
 interview, conference, *colloquium*, *ī*, n.  
 into, *in*, prep. w. acc.  
 invade, *ingredior*, *ī*, *ingressus sum*.  
 invite, send for, *arcessō*, *ere*, *arcessivī*, *arcessitus*; *invitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 island, *īnsula*, *ae*, f.  
 it, *is*, *ea*, *id*.  
 Italy, *Italia*, *ae*, f.

## J

join battle, *proelium committō*, *ere*, *misī*, *missus*; join together, unite, *coniungō*, *ere*, *iūnxī*, *iūnctus*.

journey, *iter*, *itineris*, n.; to journey, *iter faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*.  
 judge, *iūdex*, *iūdicis*, m.; *iūdicō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 just, *aequus*, *a*, *um*.  
 justice, *aequitas*, *ātis*, f.  
 justly, *iūre*, abl. of manner.

## K

keep, hold, *habēō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus*; keep, restrain, *contineō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentus*.  
 kill, *interficiō*, *ficere*, *fēcī*, *fectus*.  
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.  
 know, know how, *sciō*, *scīre*, *scīvī*, *scītus*; *nōscō*, *ere*, *nōvī*, *nōtus*. See 106; not know, *nesciō*, *ire*, *ivī*, —.

## L

Labienus, *Labīēnus*, *ī*, m.  
 land, *terra*, *ae*, f.  
 large, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*.  
 lasting, *perpetuus*, *a*, *um*.  
 lately, *nūper*, adv.  
 latter, *hīc*.  
 law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.  
 lay before, report, *dēferō*, *dēferre*, *dētulī*, *dēlātus*; lay waste, *vāstō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 laziness, *pigritia*, *ae*, f.  
 lazy, *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*.  
 lead, *dūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead across, *trādūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead down, *dēdūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead out, *ēdūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead to, *addūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*.  
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, m. and f.  
 learn, *cōgnōscō*, *ere*, *cōgnōvī*, *cōgnītus*.  
 leave behind, leave, *relinquō*, *ere*, *līquī*, *līctus*; *exēō*, *ire*, *ii*, *itus*.

leave off, cease, *dēsīnō, ere, dēsivī* or *dēsī, dēsitus*.

left, *sinister, sinistra, sinistrum*. See remaining.

legate, *lēgātus, ī, m*.

legion, *legiō, ōnis, f*.

leisure, *ŏtium, ī, n*.

less, *minor, minus*; gen. *minōris*.

lessen, *levō, āre, ōvī, ātus*.

letter, *litterae, ārum, f. pl.*; *epistula, ae, f*.

liberality, *liberālitās, ātis, f*.

liberty, *libertās, ātis, f*.

lieutenant, *lēgātus, ī, m*.

life, *vita, ae, f*.

light, daylight, *lux, lucis, f*.

like, *similis, e*; like, wish, *volō, velle, volui*.

line, line of battle, *aciēs, ēī, f*.

linger around. See remain.

little, *parvus, a, um*; too little, *parum, adv*.

live, *vivō, ere, vixī, victus*; *vitalum dēgō, ere, dēgī, —*.

long, long for, desire eagerly, *cupiō, cupere, cupivī* or *cupiī, cupitus*.

long, a long time, longer, longest, *diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv*.

long, *longus, a, um*; long, as long as. See while.

long since, *iam pridem, adv*.

look at, *intueor, ēvī, intuitus sum*.

love, *amor, ōris, m*; to love, *amō, āre, ōvī, ātus*.

**M**

make, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*; make an assault. See assault; make requital, *grātiā referō, referre, rettuli, relātus*.—I shall requite you, *tibi grātiā referam*; make upon, *in-*

*ferō, inferre, intuli, illātus*.—to make war upon the Gauls, *Gallīs bellum inferre*; make use of, *utor, ūti, ūsus sum*.

man, *vir, virī, m*, A MAN as distinguished from a woman; *homō, inis, m*. and *f*, MAN, A HUMAN BEING.

many, *multi, ae, a*; many times, *saepe*.

march, *iter, itineris, n*; to march, *iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*.

marry (of a man), *in mātrimonium dūcō*; (of a woman), *nūdō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūpta*.

may. See 118, 119.

meantime, in the meantime, *interim, intereā, advs*.

meditate. See think about.

meet, to meet, *sē obvium ferre*; you met me, *mihi sē obvium tulisti*; go to meet, *obviam* (or *obvius, a, um*) *eō, ire, ivī* or *iī, itus, w. dat.*; meet with, *invenio, ire, vēmī, ventus, w. acc*.

memory, *memoria, ae, f*.

messenger, *nūntius, ī, m*.

method, *ratio, ōnis, f*.

middle, middle of, *medius, a, um*.

mile, *mille passuum*.

military affairs, *rēs militāris, rei militāris*.

mind, *mēns, mentis, f*, UNDERSTANDING, INTELLECT, REASON; *animus, ī, m*, WILL, DESIRE, PURPOSE; FEELING, AFFECTION, SENTIMENT.

mistake, be misunderstood, *errō, āre, ōvī, ātus*.

money, *pecūnia, ae, f*.

more, *plūs, plūris, n*; *amplius, magis, advs*.

mother, *māter, mātris, f*.

mountain, *mōns, montis, m*.

mourn, *lūgeō, ēre, lūxī*.

**move**, *moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus*.  
**much**, *multus, a, um*.  
**multitude**, *multitūdō, inis, f*.  
**must**. See 111.  
**my**, *meus, a, um*.

## N

**name**, *nōmen, nōminis, n.*; to name.  
 See call.  
**narrow**, contracted, small, *parvus, a, um*; narrow limits, *angustiae, ārum, f. pl.*; *angustus, a, um*.  
**nature**, *nātūra, ae, f*.  
**near**, *prope, ferē, advs*.  
**nearest**, *proximus, a, ur*.  
**nearly**, *paene, adv*.  
**need**, *opus*, indecl. n., *ūsus, ūs, m*.  
**need**, *egeō* or *indigeō, ēre, uī, —*.  
**negligence**, *nēquitia, ae, f*.  
**neighborhood**, in the neighborhood of, *ad*, prep. w. acc.  
**neighbors**, *finitimī, ōrum, m. pl.*; *vicinus, i, m*.  
**neither . . . nor**, *neque . . . neque, nec . . . nec*.  
**never**, *numquam (nunquam), adv*.  
**nevertheless**, yet, still, *tamen*; *nilō minus*, advs.  
**new**, *novus, a, um*.  
**nick of time**, *discrimen, inis, n*.  
**night**, *nox, noctis, f.*; night before, *nox superior*.  
**no**, *nullus, a, um*. See 81.  
**nobody**, no one, *nēmō*, gen. and abl. supplied from *nullus*.  
**not**, *nōn, nē, adv.*; not even, *nē . . . quidem*, w. the emphatic word between *nē* and *quidem*.  
**not only . . . but also**, *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*.  
**not yet**, *nōndum*, adv.

**nothing**, *nihil*, indecl.  
**now**, *nunc, iam*, adva.  
**numerous**, *crēber, crēbra, crēbrum*.

## O

**oath**, *iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n*.  
**obey**, *pāreō, ēre, uī, pāritūrus*.  
**occupy**, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
**officer**, *legātus, i, m*.  
**often**, *saepe*, adv.  
**old**, *senex*, gen. *senis*; old, having been born, *nātus, a, um*; he is twenty years old, *vigintī annōs nātus est*.  
**on**, *in*, prep. w. acc. after verbs of motion, w. abl. after verbs of rest.  
**on this side of**, *cis*, prep. w. acc.  
**once**, at once, *statim*, adv.  
**one**, *ūnus, a, um*.  
**one another**. See 68.  
**one by one**, *singulī, ae, a*.  
**opinion**, *sententia, ae, f*, OPINION, DECISION, SENTENCE, JUDGMENT; *opiniō, ōnis, f*, OPINION, SUPPOSITION, REPUTATION, BELIEF.  
**opportunity**, *potestās, ātis, f*.  
**opposite**, *adversus, a, um*.  
**or**, *aut*; in double questions, *an*; or not, in direct double questions, *an nōn*; in indirect double questions, *necne*. See 80.  
**order**, in order that, *ut*, conj. See 144.  
**order**, by order, *iussū*, abl. sing. m.  
**order**, command, *iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus*; *imperō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
**ordinary**, *mediocris, e*.  
**other**, some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī*.  
**ought**, *dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus*; *dēbeō* denotes a moral obligation. See 111.

our, *noster, nostra, nostrum*.  
overcome, *superō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
own. See 69.

P

pardon, *ignōscō, ere, ignōvī, ignōtus*;  
pardon for sake of, *condōnō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
parent, *parēns, entis, c*.  
part, *pars, partis, f*.  
patience, *patientia, ae, f*.  
patriotic, *bonus, a, um*; *amāns rei publicae*.  
pay, *pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus*; pay one's respects, *salūtō, āre, āvī, ātum*.  
peace, *pāx, pācis, f*.  
perfect, *perfectus, a, um*.  
perform, *fungor, fungī, fūctus sum*,  
EXECUTE, DISCHARGE, OBSERVE;  
*gerō, ere, gessi, gestus*, MANAGE,  
WAGE, TRANSACT, ACCOMPLISH.  
peril, *periculum, ī, n*.  
perilous, *periculōsus, a, um*.  
perish, *pereō, īre, īī, itus*.  
permit, allow, suffer, *patior, pati, passus sum*.  
persist, *perseverō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
persuade, *persuādēō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus*.  
pity, *miseret, miserēre, miseruit*.  
See 27.  
place, *locus, ī, m*; pl. *locī* and *loca*,  
*locōrum, m*. and *n*.  
plan, *cōsiliū, ī, n*., DETERMINATION,  
RESOLUTION, PURPOSE; *ratio, ōnis*,  
*f*., COURSE, MANNER, METHOD, FASH-  
ION.  
please, *dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. acc*;  
*placeō, ēre, uī, itus, w. dat*.  
pleasing, *grātus, a, um*.

pleasure, *dēlectatiō, ōnis, f*.  
pledge, *fidēs, eī, f*.  
plunder, pillage, *diripiō, ere, uī, rep-  
tus*.  
pole, long pole, *longurius, ī, m*.  
poor, *pauper, gen. pauperis*.  
possession, *possessiō, ōnis, f*.; often  
expressed by neuter plural; *e.g.* him-  
self and his possessions, *sē suaque*;  
take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. acc*.; get possession of,  
*potior, irī, itus sum*.  
power, bodily strength, *vīs, (vis), f*. (pl.  
*vīrēs*).  
powerful, *potēns, gen. potentis*; pow-  
erful, to be very powerful, *plūrimum  
posse, or valēre*.  
practically acquainted with, *perī-  
tus, a, um, w. gen*.  
praetor, *praetor, ōris, m*.  
praise, *laus, laudis, f*.; to praise,  
*laudō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
prefer, *mālō, mälle, mālūī*.  
prepare, *parō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
present, be present, *adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus*.  
preserve, *cōservō, āre, āvī, ātus*.  
prevent, *dēterreō, ēre, uī, itus*; *pro-  
hibeō, ēre, uī, itus*.  
price, *pretium, ī, n*.  
prisoner, *reus, ī, m*.  
promise, *polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum*.  
proper, *idōneus, a, um*.  
property, *rēs, rērum, f. pl.*; *bona, ōrum, n. pl*.  
prosperity, *secundiōrēs rēs*.  
provided that, *modo, dum, dum modo*,  
conj. See 172.  
province, *prōvincia, ae, f*.  
provision, make provision, *prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus*.

prudence, *prudentia*, *ae*, *f*.  
 punish, *pūniō*, *ire*, *ivi*, *ītus*.  
 punishment, *supplicium*, *i*, *n*.; to  
 inflict punishment upon any one, *dē*  
*aliquō supplicium sūmō*, *ere*, *sūmpsī*,  
*sūmptum*; to suffer punishment,  
*poenās persolvō*, *ere*, *solvi*, *solūtus*;  
*supplicium dō*, *i*.  
 purpose, for the purpose of, *causā*,  
 abl. of cause and stands after its  
 limiting genitive.  
 put in charge of, *praeſciō*, *ere*, *feci*,  
*fectus*.  
 put to death, *neō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 put to flight, in *fugam dō*, *dare*, *dedī*,  
*datus*; *fugō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

## Q

quarrel, *dissentiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 question, *quaestiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 quickly, *celeriter*, *adv*.

## R

rank, line of battle, *aciēs*, *ēī*, *f*.  
 rapidly, *celeriter*, *adv*.  
 rather, more, *magis*, *adv*.  
 read, *legō*, *ere*, *lēgī*, *lēctus*.  
 ready, *parātus*, *a*, *um*; get ready,  
*comparō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 rear, *novissimum agmen*.  
 reason, cause, *causa*, *ae*, *f*.  
 recall, *revocō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 receive, *accipio*, *cipere*, *cēpi*, *ceptus*.  
 recommend, urge, *hortor*, *ārī*, *ātus*  
*sum*; *cohortor*.  
 redoubt, fortress, *castellum*, *i*, *n*.  
 refrain, *temperō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *w. dat.*  
 of reflexive pronoun; *abstineō*, *ēre*,  
*uī*, *lentus*.  
 refuse, *recūsō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; *negō*,  
*āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

regard, *dūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*.  
 reign, *regnō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 relieve, *liberō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 remain, stay, *remaneō*, *ēre*, *mānsī*,  
*mānsus*.  
 remaining, *reliquus*, *a*, *um*.  
 remember, *memini*, *meminisse*; *remi-*  
*nīscor*, *i*, —.  
 remind, *admoneō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *ītus*.  
 renew, *redintegrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 repent, *paenitet*, *ēre*, *paenituit*.  
 reply, *respondeō*, *ēre*, *spondī*, *spōnsum*.  
 rescue, *eripio*, *eripere*, *eripui*, *erēp-*  
*tus*.  
 residence, *domiciliūm*, *i*, *n*.  
 resources, *ops*, *opīs*, *f. pl.*; aid (in  
*sing.*).  
 rest of, *reliquus*, *a*, *um*; the rest,  
*ceteri*, *ae*, *a*.  
 restrain, *reprimō*, *ēre*, *pressī*, *pressus*;  
*retineō*, *ēre*, *tinui*, *tentus*.  
 retain, hold, *teneō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentus*.  
 return, *revertor*, *i*, *versus sum*; *re-*  
*vertō*, *ere*, *reverti*; the present, im-  
 perfect, and future tenses have the  
 passive form; *redeō*, *ire*, *ii*, *ītus*;  
*reddō*, *ere*, *reddidī*, *redditus* (*trans.*).  
 revolt, *rebelliō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 revolution, new form of government,  
*nova imperia* (*n. pl.*), *rēs novae*.  
 Rhine, *Rhēnus*, *i*, *m*.  
 rich, *dives*, *itis*; *locuplēs*, *ētis*, *adjs*.  
 rigging, *fūnēs*, *iūm*, *m. pl*.  
 right, *iūs*, *iūris*, *n*.; *dexter*, *dextra*,  
*dextrum*, *adj*.  
 river, *flūmen*, *flūminis*, *n*.  
 road, *via*, *ae*, *f*.; *iter*, *itineris*, *n*.  
 rock, *saxum*, *i*, *n*.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus*, *a*, *um*.  
 Rome, *Rōma*, *ae*, *f*.  
 route, *fugō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

rule, *rēgnūm*, *ī*, n.; *imperium*, *ī*, n.;  
*regō*, *regere*, *rēxī*, *rēctus*; rule over,  
*imperō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, w. dat.  
 run, *currō*, *ere*, *cucurrī*, *cursus*.

## S

safe, *tūtus*, *a*, *um*, WELL GUARDED,  
 SECURE, OUT OF DANGER; *salvus*, *a*,  
*um*, *incolumis*, *e*, UNHARMED, UN-  
 INJURED, WELL, SOUND.

safety, *salūs*, *ūtis*, f.

sake, for the sake of, *causā*.

same, the same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.

save, *servō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; *cōservō*,  
*āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; *cōservō* is *servō* in-  
 tensified by the prefix *cōn* and prop-  
 erly signifies KEEP THOROUGHLY,  
 SAVE COMPLETELY.

say, *dicō*, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictus*; say not,  
*negō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

scatter, rout, *fugō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

scheme. See plan.

sea, *mare*, *maris*, n.

seal, *signum*, *ī*, n.

see, *videō*, *ēre*, *vidī*, *vīsus*.

seek, *petō*, *ere*, *petīvī*, *petītus*.

seem, *videor*, *ērī*, *vīsus sum*.

seize, *occupō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; *capiō*,  
*ere*, *cēpī*, *captus*; *comprehendō*, *ere*,  
*comprehendī*, *comprehēnsus*.

self, *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

sell, *vendō*, *ere*, *vendidī*, *vēnditus*.

senate, *senātor*, *ōris*, m.

send, *mittō*, *ere*, *misī*, *missus*.

Sequani, *Sequani*, *ōrum*, m. pl.

set fire to, *incendō*, *ere*, *cendī*, *cēnsus*.

set out, march, depart, *proficiscor*, *ī*,  
*profectus sum*.

several. See many.

severe, *gravis*, *e*.

she, generally omitted. See 64.

shield, *scūtum*, *ī*, n.

ship, *nāvis*, *is*, f.

short, *brevis*, *e*.

show, *doceō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *doctus*.

shudder at, *horreō*, *ēre*, *horruī*, no  
 sup., governs acc.

sick, *aeger*, *aegra*, *aegrum*.

side, on this side of, *cis*, prep. w. acc.

signal, *signum*, *ī*, n.

silent, keep silent, *taceō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus*.

since, *cum*, *quoniam*, conj. See 87.

sister, *soror*, *ōris*, f.

sit, be seated, *sedeō*, *ēre*, *sēdī*, *sessum*.

six, *sex*, indecl.

sixteen, *sēdecim*, indecl.

size, *māgnitūdō*, *inis*, f.

skillful, practically acquainted with,  
*perītus*, *a*, *um*.

slaughter, *occidō*, *ere*, *cīdī*, *cīsus*.

slave, *servus*, *ī*, m.

slay, kill, *interficiō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *fectus*.

small, *parvus*, *a*, *um*.

so, *tam*, *ita*, *sic*, advs.; so great, *tan-  
 tus*, *a*, *um*.

soldier, *miles*, *militis*, m.

some one, something, some, *aliquis*,  
*quīdam*, *nesciō quis*.

some . . . others, *aliī* . . . *aliī*.

son, *filius*, *ī*, m.

soon, as soon as possible, *quam pri-  
 mum*.

speak, *loquor*, *ī*, *locūtus sum*; *dicō*,  
*ere*, *dixī*, *dictus*.

stand, *stō*, *stāre*, *stetī*, *stātus*.

start out for. See set out.

state, *rēs pública*, *rei publicae*, f.

stay, *remaneō*, *ēre*, *mānsī*, *mānsūrus*.

still, *etiam nunc*, *tamen*, advs.

storm, *expugnō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; a  
 storm, tempest, *tempestās*, *ātis*, f.

stranger, *aliēnus*, *ī*, m.

street, road, *via*, *ae*, *f*.  
 strong, *firmitus*, *a*, *um*.  
 study, *studium*, *i*, *n*.  
 stupid, *stultus*, *a*, *um*; *amens*, *gen. amentis*.  
 subdue, pacify, *pācō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 such, so great, *tantus*, *a*, *um*; such, of such a kind, *tālis*, *e*; such . . . as, *tantus* . . . *quantus*, when referring to size; *tālis* . . . *quālis*, when referring to kind, nature, quality.  
 suddenly, *subitō*, *repente*, *advs*.  
 suffer, *patior*, *passus sum*; allow, *permitto*, *3*; *sinō*, *ere*, *sivī*, *situs*; endure, *perferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*.  
 suicide, to commit suicide, *morlem*, *dat. of reflex.*, *cōnsēcō*, *scīscere*, *scīvī*, *scītus*.  
 suitable, *idōneus*, *a*, *um*.  
 summon, *vocō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 supplies, *comēdātus*, *ūs*, *m.*, used in both sing. and pl.; supplies (of grain), *rēs frūmentāria*.  
 suppose, *existimō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 surely, *profectō*, *adv*.  
 surpass, excel, *antecellō*, *ere*, *no perf. nor sup.*; *praecēdō*, *ere*, *cessī*, *cessūrus*; *superō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 surrender, *dēdō*, *ere*, *dēdidī*, *dēditus*; a surrender, *dēditō*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
 surround, *circumdō*, *are*, *dedī*, *datus*; *circumveniō*, *īre*, *venī*, *ventus*.  
 swamp, *palūs*, *ūdis*, *f*.  
 sword, *gladius*, *i*, *m*.

## T

table, *mēnsa*, *ae*, *f*.  
 take, *capīō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captus*; take away, *removēō*, *ēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtus*; take from, *ēripīō*, *ēripere*, *ēripui*,

*ēreptus*; take part, be engaged in anything, *versor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*; take possession of, *occupō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *w. acc.*; take the lead of, *praesum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*.  
 task, *pēnsūm*, *i*, *n*.  
 tax, *stipendium*, *i*, *n*.  
 teach, *doceō*, *ēre*, *docuī*, *doctus*.  
 tell, *dīcō*, *ere*, *dīxī*, *dictus*; *nārrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.  
 temple, *templum*, *i*, *n*.  
 ten, *decem*, *indecl*.  
 terrify, *perterreō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus*.  
 territory, *finēs*, *ium*, *m. pl.*; *ager*, *agrī*, *m*.  
 than, *quam*, *adv*. See 42.  
 thank, *grātiās agō*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *āctus*.  
 thankful, feel thankful, *grātiām habeo*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus*.  
 that, *ille*, *is*; that, in order that, *ut*; that not, *nē*, *ut nōn*.  
 the . . . the, *quantō* . . . *tantō*; *quō* . . . *eō*.  
 one . . . the other, *alter* . . . *alter*; the one party . . . the other, *alterī* . . . *alterī*.  
 their, *suus*, *a*, *um*, when referring to same person or thing as the subject of its sentence, otherwise, *eōrum*.  
 there, in that place, *ibi*, *adv*.  
 they, generally omitted. See 64.  
 thing, circumstance, reason, etc., *rēs*, *rei*, *f*.  
 think, *putō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; *arbitror*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*; think upon, think of, *cogitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *w. acc*.  
 third, *tertius*, *a*, *um*.  
 this, *hic*, *is*.  
 though, although, *cum*, *w. subj*. See 87, 6.

thousand, *mīle*, indecl. adj. in sing.;

pl., *mīlia, ium*, noun, n.

three, *trīs, tria*.

through, throughout, *per*, prep. w. acc.

till, until, *dum, quoad*, conj. See 156.

time, *tempus, oris*, n.; for all time, *in perpetuum*, sc. *tempus*; at one and the same time, *simul*, adv.; now for a long time, *iam diū, iam dūdum*, advs.; the second time, a second time, *iterum*, adv.

to, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

to-day, *hodiē*, adv.

towards, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

town, *oppidum, ī*, n.

troops, *cōpiae, ārum*, f. pl.; *mīles, itis*, m.; *manus, ūs*, f.

true, *vērus, a, um*.

trust, hope, *spērō, āre, avi, dtus*.

trusting to, *frētus, a, um*, w. abl.

try, *exerior, īrī, expertus sum*.

twice, *bis*, num. adv.

two, *duo, duae, duo*.

## U

unbroken, *integer, gra, grum*.

under, *sub*, prep. w. acc. and abl.

understand, *intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus*.

undertake, carry out, perform, *cōficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus*.

unexpected, *inopināns, antis*.

unfortunate, *miser, misera, miserum*.

unless, *nisi*, conj.

unpopularity, *invidia, ae, f*.

until, till, *dum, quoad*, conj. See 156.

unwilling, *invītus, a, um*; be unwilling, *nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi*.

unworthy, *indignus, a, um*.

upon, *in*, prep. w. acc.

urge, *cohortor, ārī, dtus sum*.

use, *ūsus, ūs, m*; *utor, ūti, ūsus sum*.

## V

valor, *virtūs, ūtis, f*.

valuable. See 29.

very, *valdē*, adv.; when a noun is to be emphasized, *ipse* is used; e.g. the very city, *urbs ipsa*.

very much, *vehementer*, adv.

vicinity, in or into the vicinity of, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

victor, *victor, ōris, m*.

victory, *victōria, ae, f*.

village, *vīcus, ī, m*.

violence, *vis, (vis), f*.

virtue, *virtūs, ūtis, f*.

voice, *vōx, vōcis, f*.

vote, *cēnsēō, ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsusum*.

## W

wage, carry on, *gerō, ere, gessī, gestus*.

wait for, await, wait to see, *expectō (expectō), āre, avi, dtus*.

wall, *mūrus, ī, m*, the general term; *moenia, ium*, n. pl., CITY WALLS, RAMPARTS, BULWARKS; *pariēs, parietis*, m., WALL OF A HOUSE.

war, *bellum, ī, n*.

warn, *moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus*.

way, *via, ae, f*.

weapon, *telum, ī, n*.

weary, *dēfessus, a, um*.

well, *bene*, adv.

when, *cum, ubi, ut*. See 152, 153.

where, *ubi*, adv.; *quō*, adv.

whether, *utrum, num, —nē*. See 80.

while, *dum*, conj.; for a little while, *paulisper*, adv.; a little while ago, *paulō ante*. See 87.



who, which, what, *quī, quod*, rel. pron.; *quis, quae, quid*, and *quī, quae, quod*, interrog. pron. and adj.

whole, wholly. See all.

why, *cūr, quid*.

wide, *lātus, a, um*.

width, *lātitudō, inis, f*.

wife, *uxor, ōris, f*; *coniūnx, iugis, f*.

willing, be willing, *volō, velle, voluī*.

wing, *cornū, ūs, n*.

winter, *hiems, hiemis, f*; pass the winter, *hiemō, āre, dvi, ātus*; winter quarters, *hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., sc. castra*.

wisdom, *sapientia, ae, f*.

wise, *sapiēns*, gen. *sapientis*.

wish, desire, be willing, *volō, velle, voluī*.

with, in company with, *cum*, prep. w. abl.; with, near to, at the house of, *apud*, prep. w. acc.; with respect to, *dē*, prep. w. abl.

withdraw, *dēficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus*; to withdraw from allegiance to the king, *ā rēge dēficere*; withdraw, be-take one's self, *recipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptus*, with reflex.; *sē cōnferre*.

without, *sine*, prep. w. abl.; be without, *careō, ēre, nī, iūrū*, w. abl.

withstand, *obstō, stāre, stifi, stātūrus*, w. dat.; *sustineō, ēre, nī, lentus*, w. acc.

witness, *testis*, m. and f.; witness, see, *videō, ēre, vidī, visus*.

wonder, *miror, āri, ātus sum*.

work, labor, *ōris, m*; *labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus*.

worthy, *dignus, a, um*; it is worth while, *tantū est*.

write, *scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus*.

wrong, *iniūria, ae, f*; wrong-doing, mischief, *malefīcium, ī, n*.

## Y

year, *annus, ī, m*.

yesterday, *hesternō diē*.

yet, *tamen*, adv.

you, *tū*. See 64.

your, *tuus, a, um*, when addressing one person; *vester, vestra, vestrum*, when addressing more than one.

yourself, *tui*, etc. See 66, 69.

youth, a young man, *iuvenis, is, m*; *adulēscēns, entis*, m. and f.

## Z

zeal, *studium, ī, n*.

# GRAMMATICAL INDEX

[FIGURES REFER TO SECTIONS]

- Ablative**, syntax of, 39-52; abl. of accompaniment, 46; of cause, 43; of degree of difference, 48; of manner, 45; of material, 40; of means, 43; of source, 40; of price, 50; of quality, 49; of separation, 39; of specification, 47; of time, 51; with a comparative, 42; with deponents (*utor, fruor*, etc.), 44; with *ex* or *dē* for partitive gen., 23; abl. absolute, 89.
- ac** (*atque*), with *idem*, 76.
- Accompaniment**, expressed by *cum* and *abl.*, 46.
- Accusative**, syntax of, 12-18; cognate acc., 13; double acc., 14-15; of duration of time, 16; of exclamation, 18; of extent of space, 16; of place to which, 17; with verbs of aiding, pleasing, etc., 32, 1; with verbs of pitying, repenting, etc., 27; with verbs of remembering, etc., 25, 2.
- Accusing**, etc., verbs of, with gen., 26.
- Action**, nouns of, 21.
- adiuvō*, 32, 1.
- Adjectives**, agreement of attributive adjs., 5; agreement of predicate adj., 6; agreement with natural gender, 7; gen. with adjs., 24.
- Agent**, expressed by dat., 95; by *ā*, *ab* with *abl.*, 41.
- Agreement**, of adjs., 5-7; of appositives, 1-2; of predicate nouns, 4; of collective noun and a verb, 9; of subject and predicate, 10; of verb, 8.
- aliquis*, 72.
- alius*, distinction from *alter*, 73.
- Although**, 171, 87, 6.
- an**, in direct questions, 80.
- Answers**, 81.
- Antecedent**, incorporation of, 71, 5; agreement of relative with, 71, 1, 2; sometimes omitted, 71, 3.
- antequam*, 154.
- Apposition**, 1-3; appositive = English clause of time, etc., 3.
- As soon as**, 152.
- Before**, with clauses, 154.
- causā*, with gen. of gerund, etc., 142, 2.
- Causal clauses**, with *cum*, 173, 2; with *quod, quia, quoniam*, 173, 1; expressed by participle, 87, 3.
- Causal relatives**, 173, 4.
- Cause**, *abl.* of, 22.
- Characteristic**, gen. of, 22; *abl.* of, 49; relative clauses of, 174.
- Collective noun** with singular verb, 9.

- Comparative, with or without *quam*, 42.
- Concession, expressed by participle, 87, 6.
- Concessive clauses, 171.
- Conditions, 121-127; contrary to fact, 123; apodosis in indicative, 123; future ("less vivid"), 125; future ("more vivid"), 124; simple (where apodosis states a fact), 122; in ind. disc., 169; expressed by participle, 87, 2.
- Conjunctions, list of, and uses, 82.
- cum*, causal, 173, 2; concessive, 171, 2; temporal, 153; clauses with = English perf. participle, 85, 2; = English present passive participle, 85, 3.
- cum primum* = as soon as, 152.
- cupiō*, constr. with, 148, 3.
- Dative, syntax of, 31-37; reference, 36; of agent, 95; of indirect object, 31; of interest, 36; of possessor, 34; of purpose or end, 37; with verbs compounded with prepositions (*ad*, *ante*, etc.), 32; with adjectives, 35; retained with passive of intransitives, 32, 2.
- dēbeō*, past tenses with pres. inf., 112.
- Declaratory sentences in ind. disc., 160.
- Degree of difference, abl. of, 48.
- Deliberative subjunctive, 110.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 58-61.
- Deponents, with abl., 44; participles of, 85, 1.
- Descriptive genitive, 22.
- Direct reflexive, 65, 1.
- Discourse, indirect. See Indirect discourse.
- Disjunctive questions. See Double questions.
- domus*, constr., 17, 1, 3.
- Double dative, 37.
- Double questions, 80.
- Doubting, verbs of, constr., 136.
- dum*, in proviso, 172; representing present passive participle, 85, 3; = until, 156; = while, 102, 2.
- dum modo*, in proviso, 172.
- Duration of time, acc. of, 16.
- etsi* = even if, 171, 3.
- Exclamation, in the acc., 18.
- Extent of space, acc. of, 16.
- Fearing, verbs of, constr., 135.
- Feeling, nouns of, 21.
- For, with temporal expressions, 16.
- Forgetting, verbs of constr. with, 25.
- Future time, in the subjunctive, 94.
- Genitive, syntax of, 20-29; with adjectives, 24; with nouns of action or feeling, 21; of charge, 26; of indefinite value, 29; objective, 21, 2; partitive, 23; with verbs of accusing, 26; with impersonal verbs, 27; with interest, etc., 28; with verbs of remembering, etc., 25.
- Gerund and gerundive, syntax of, 91-95; gerund and gerundive distinguished, 91, 92; cases of gerund, 91; gerundive used instead of gerund, 93; gerundive denoting necessity or obligation, 95; gerundive of intransitive verbs used impersonally, 95, 2; gerundive with *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, etc., 93, 2.
- hīc*, 59.
- Hindering, verbs of, constr., 150.

double

Historical present, 102, 1.  
 Historical tenses, 131, 2.  
 Hortatory subjunctive, 115; in ind. disc., 162, 3.

ating

; =

**iam**, **iam diū**, etc., with pres. and imp. tenses, 102, 3, 103, 2.

**idem**, 76.

**ille**, 61.

Imperative, 114; in ind. disc., 162, 2.

Impersonal verbs with gen., 27.

Indefinite pronouns, 72.

Indicative mode, tenses of, 102-106; conditions contrary to fact, 123, 1.

Indirect discourse, 158-169; tenses of infin. in, 161; tenses of subjunctive in, 166; conditions in, 169; hortatory subjunctive in, 162, 3; imperative in, 162, 2; questions in, 134; wishes in, 162, 3.

Indirect questions, 134.

Indirect reflexive, 65, 2.

Infinitive, formation of, 109; as object, 148; in ind. disc., 160; tenses of, 161.

Instrument. See Means.

**inter nōs**, **eē**, etc., 68.

Interest, expressed by dat., 36.

**interest**, const. with, 28.

Interrogative pronouns, 75, 79.

Intransitive verbs, with dat., 32; used impersonally in the passive, 32, 2.

**ipse**, 74.

**is**, 63.

Islands, names of small, in constr. of place, 17.

**iste**, 60.

**iubeō**, with acc., 32, 1; with infin., 148, 1.

**licet**, 119.

Manner, abl. of, 45; expressed by participle, 87, 4.

Material, abl. of, with **ex**, 40.

Means, abl. of, 43; means and agent distinguished, 43, 1; expressed by participle, 87, 5.

Measure of difference. See Degree.

**miseror**, constr. with, 27, 1.

**modo**, in proviso, 172.

**nātus**, with abl. of origin or source, 40.

**nē**, with verbs of fearing, 135; in object clauses, 147; with verbs of hindering, 150.

**-ne . . . an**, in double questions, 80.

Necessity, expressed by the gerundive, 95.

Negative command. See Prohibition.

Negatives, with connectives, 82, 7.

No, 81.

**nōn dubitō** = not to hesitate, 136, 1.

**nōnne**, in questions, 78, 2.

**nostrū** and **vestrū**, as partitive gen., 64, 1.

**num**, in indirect questions, 78, 3.

Object clauses, 146.

Objective genitive, 21, 2.

Obligation, expressed by gerundive, 95.

**omnis**, contrasted with **quisque**, 72, 2.

Origin or source, abl. of, 40.

Participles, formation of, 85; English present = Latin perf. of some deponent verbs, 85, 4; expresses time, cause, manner, etc., 87; perf. active, how represented in Latin, 85, 2; present passive, how represented in Latin, 85, 3.

- Partitive genitive, 23; substitutes for, 23, 1.  
 Passive, of intransitive verbs, 32, 2.  
 Periphrastic conjugation, 94, 95.  
 Personal pronouns, 64.  
 Pity, verbs of, constr., 27.  
 Polite subjunctive, 118.  
 Possessive pronouns, 67, 69.  
 Possessor, dat. of, 34.  
**postquam**, **posteaquam**, constr. with, 152.  
 "Potential" subjunctive, 118.  
 Predicate nouns, 4.  
 Prepositions, in composition with verbs, 33.  
 Present, historical, 102, 1; sequence with, 131, 2 (a).  
 Price, abl. of, 50.  
 Primary tenses. *See* Principal Tenses.  
 Principal tenses, 131.  
**priusquam**, 154.  
 Prohibition, 116.  
 Pronouns, syntax, etc., 58-76.  
 Provided that (proviso), 172.  
 Purpose, clauses of, 141-143.
- Quality, gen. of, 22; abl. of, 49.  
**quam**, in comparisons, 42.  
**quamquam**, 171.  
**quamvis**, 171.  
 Questions, direct, 78, 79; double or disjunctive, 80; indirect, 134; of doubt, indignation, etc., 110; rhetorical, 163.  
**quī**, preceded by *is*, 63, 1; in result clauses, 145, 1; in purpose clauses, 143, 1.  
**quia**, 173, 1.  
**quidam**, 72; **quidam ex** instead of gen. of whole, 23, 1.  
**quilibet**, 72.
- quīn**, with verbs of hindering, 150, 2; with verbs of doubting, 136.  
**quis** (indefinite), 72.  
**quisquam**, 72.  
**quisque**, distinguished from *omnia*, 72, 2; with a superlative, 72, 3.  
**quīvis**, 72.  
**quōd**, in purpose clauses, 143, 2.  
**quoad** = until, 156.  
**quod** (causal), 173, 1.  
**quōminus**, with verbs of hindering, 150.  
**quoniam**, 173, 1.
- Reciprocals, 68.  
**rēfert** = it concerns, 28.  
 Reflexive pronouns, 65, 66.  
 Relative clauses, in general, 71, 175; characteristic, 174; of cause and concession, 173, 4; of purpose, 143, 1; of result, 145, 1.  
 Remembering, verbs of, constr. with, 25.  
 Result, clauses of, 144, 145.  
**rūs**, constr., 17, 1.
- sē**, 66, 69.  
 Secondary tenses. *See* Historical tenses.  
 Separation, abl. of, 39.  
 Sequence of tenses, 131, 132.  
**simul atque** (**ac**) = as soon as, 152.  
 Specification, abl. of, 47.  
 Subjunctive, deliberative, 110; hortatory, 115; of polite or modest assertion, 118; "potential," 118; in prohibitions, 116, 2; in wishes (optative), 129; of characteristic, 174; in causal clauses, 173, 4; in purpose clauses, 141-143; in result clauses, 145, 1; in object clauses,

- 146, 147; in temporal clauses, 153, 154, 156; in conditions, 123, 125; in concessive clauses, 171; in clauses of proviso, 172; tenses of, in ind. disc., 166; future time in, 94.
- sui*, with gerundive, 93, 2.
- Supine, syntax of, 96.
- suus*, 67, 69.
- tālis*, use of *is* like, 63, 3.
- Temporal clauses, 152-156; with *dum*, 102, 1, 155, 156; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 154.
- Tenses, of participle, 84, 85; of indicative, 102-106; historical, defined, 131, 2; of infinitive, 108, 109; of subjunctive in ind. disc., 166; principal, defined, 131; sequence of, 132.
- That, 158, caution.
- Time, how long, 16; when or within what period, 51; clauses of, expressed by participle, 87, 1.
- Towns, in constructions of place to which, 17.
- Until, 154, 2, 156.
- ut*, in clauses of result, 145; of purpose, 143; = *as*, when, in temporal clauses, 152; with verbs of fearing, 135; in object clauses, 147.
- ut primum* = *as soon as*, 152.
- ūtor*, etc., constr. with; 44.
- utrum . . . an*, in double questions, 80.
- Value, indefinite, gen. of, 29.
- Verbs, agreement with subject, 8; with two acc., list, 14, 15; with gen., list, 25, 26; with dat., list, 32, 33; with abl., list, 44; with inf. as object, list, 148, 3; taking object clauses, list, 147; with ind. disc., 160.
- Vestrū*. See *Nostrū*.
- Want, verbs of, with abl., 39.
- Wishes, 128, 129; in ind. disc., 162, 3.
- Yes, 81, 2.

linii - deponent verbs

in dei iudicio ausus sumus hoc a

gaudere propter quod sumus

in dei iudicio solutus a hoc a iudicio

in dei iudicio a hoc a iudicio a tempore.





1. 1st - 1st - 1st  
2. 1st - 1st - 1st  
3. 1st - 1st - 1st  
4. 1st - 1st - 1st  
5. 1st - 1st - 1st  
6. 1st - 1st - 1st  
7. 1st - 1st - 1st  
8. 1st - 1st - 1st  
9. 1st - 1st - 1st  
10. 1st - 1st - 1st

11. 1st - 1st - 1st  
12. 1st - 1st - 1st  
13. 1st - 1st - 1st  
14. 1st - 1st - 1st  
15. 1st - 1st - 1st  
16. 1st - 1st - 1st  
17. 1st - 1st - 1st  
18. 1st - 1st - 1st  
19. 1st - 1st - 1st  
20. 1st - 1st - 1st

21. 1st - 1st - 1st  
22. 1st - 1st - 1st  
23. 1st - 1st - 1st  
24. 1st - 1st - 1st  
25. 1st - 1st - 1st  
26. 1st - 1st - 1st  
27. 1st - 1st - 1st  
28. 1st - 1st - 1st  
29. 1st - 1st - 1st  
30. 1st - 1st - 1st

Journal of Lessons 15/11.  
1. to 159 on page 223 15,  
16

211  
-24  
-25  
C2

7.



**Harvard College Library**

FROM

*Tufts College*

